

Endnotes

Chapter 1

1. Michael Learmonth, "Social Media Paves Way to White House," *Advertising Age*, March 30, 2009, p. 16; Noreen O'Leary, "GMBB," *AdweekMedia*, June 15, 2009, p. 2; John Quelch, "The Marketing of a President," *Harvard Business School Working Knowledge*, November 12, 2008.
2. Philip Kotler, "Marketing: The Underappreciated Workhorse," *Market Leader* Quarter 2 (2009), pp. 8–10.
3. Peter C. Verhoef and Peter S. H. Leeflang, "Understanding the Marketing Department's Influence within the Firm," *Journal of Marketing* 73 (March 2009), pp. 14–37.
4. Eric Newman, "To Boost the Bottom Line, Strengthen the Front Line," *Brandweek*, June 9, 2008, p. 10.
5. Stephanie Clifford, "A Video Prank at Domino's Taints Brand," *New York Times*, April 15, 2009; Thom Forbes, "Domino's Takes Cautious Approach to 'Prank' Video," *Ad Age*, April 15, 2009.
6. Jon Fine, "Marketing's Drift Away From Media," *BusinessWeek*, August 17, 2009, p. 64.
7. American Marketing Association, "Definition of Marketing," www.marketingpower.com/AboutAMA/Pages/DefinitionofMarketing.aspx, 2007; Lisa Keefe, "Marketing Defined," *Marketing News*, January 15, 2008, pp. 28–29.
8. Peter Drucker, *Management: Tasks, Responsibilities, Practices* (New York: Harper and Row, 1973), pp. 64–65.
9. B. Joseph Pine II and James Gilmore, *The Experience Economy* (Boston: Harvard Business School Press, 1999); Bernd Schmitt, *Experience Marketing* (New York: Free Press, 1999); Philip Kotler, "Dream Vacations: The Booming Market for Designed Experiences," *The Futurist*, October 1984, pp. 7–13.
10. Irving J. Rein, Philip Kotler, Michael Hamlin, and Martin Stoller, *High Visibility*, 3rd ed. (New York: McGraw-Hill, 2006).
11. Philip Kotler, Christer Asplund, Irving Rein, and Donald H. Haider, *Marketing Places in Europe: Attracting Investments, Industries, Residents, and Visitors to European Cities, Communities, Regions, and Nations* (London: Financial Times Prentice Hall, 1999); Philip Kotler, Irving J. Rein, and Donald Haider, *Marketing Places: Attracting Investment, Industry, and Tourism to Cities, States, and Nations* (New York: Free Press, 1993).
12. Michael McCarthy, "Vegas Goes Back to Naughty Roots," *USA Today*, April 11, 2005; Julie Dunn, "Vegas Hopes for Payoff with Denverites," *Denver Post*, June 16, 2005; John M. Broder, "The Pied Piper of Las Vegas Seems to Have Perfect Pitch," *New York Times*, June 4, 2004; Chris Jones, "Las Vegas Tourism: Fewer Visitors, Don't Blame Fuel," *Las Vegas Review-Journal*, July 15, 2006; Richard Velotta, "Report: Las Vegas Tourism Tumbles 11.9 percent in January," *Las Vegas Sun*, March 10, 2009.
13. Carl Shapiro and Hal R. Varian, "Versioning: The Smart Way to Sell Information," *Harvard Business Review*, November–December 1998, pp. 106–14.
14. John R. Brandt, "Dare to Be Different," *Chief Executive*, May 2003, pp. 34–38.
15. Jena McGregor, Matthew Boyle, and Peter Burrows, "Your New Customer: The State," *BusinessWeek*, March 23 and 30, 2009, p. 66.
16. Jeffrey Rayport and John Sviokla, "Exploring the Virtual Value Chain," *Harvard Business Review*, November–December 1995, pp. 75–85; Jeffrey Rayport and John Sviokla, "Managing in the Marketspace," *Harvard Business Review*, November–December 1994, pp. 141–150.
17. Mohan Sawhney, *Seven Steps to Nirvana* (New York: McGraw-Hill, 2001).
18. Nikolaus Franke, Peter Keinz, and Christoph J. Steger, "Testing the Value of Customization: When Do Customers Really Prefer Products Tailored to Their Preferences?" *Journal of Marketing* 73 (September 2009), pp. 103–21.
19. Tom Szaky, "Revolution in a Bottle," *Portfolio Trade*, 2009; Linda M. Castellito, "TerraCycle Founder's Journey Started with Worm Poop," *USA Today*, September 25, 2009, p. 5B.
20. "Food Site Finds Recipe For Mixing in Sponsors, On the Hot Seat," *Boston Globe*, September 6, 2009, p. G3; "Allrecipes.com Stirs Up Success," press release, www.allrecipes.com, July 21, 2009; Eric Engelman, "Questions for Lisa Sharples, President of Allrecipes.com," *Puget Sound Business Journal*, October 10, 2008.
21. Adam Lashinsky, "Shoutout in Gadget Land," *Fortune*, November 10, 2003, pp. 77–86; "Computer Industry Trends: Top 100 Companies," www.netvalley.com; Tim Conneally, "Gartner: Acer Gains Big Worldwide, Apple Gains in US," *Betanews*, October 15, 2008.
22. "Dick's Sporting Goods, Inc. (DKS.N) (New York Stock Exchange)," *Reuters*, www.reuters.com.
23. Anya Kamenetz, "The Network Unbound," *Fast Company*, June 2006, pp. 69–73.
24. David Kiley, "Advertisers, Start Your Engines," *BusinessWeek*, March 6, 2006, p. 26; Cameron Wykes, "Making Sense Out of Social Nets," *AdweekMedia*, July 6, 2009, p. 2.
25. "2005 Marketing Receptivity Survey," *Yankelovich Partners Inc.*, April 18, 2005.
26. Kate Brumbeck, "Alabama Flea Market Owner Turns Into YouTube Phenomenon," *Associated Press*, June 30, 2007.
27. Martin Bosworth, "Loyalty Cards: Rewards or Threats?" *ConsumerAffairs.com*, July 11, 2005.

28. Antonio Gonsalves, "Dell Makes \$3 Million from Twitter-Related Sales," *InformationWeek*, June 12, 2009.
29. Linda Tischler, "What's The Buzz?" *Fast Company*, May 2004, p. 76.
30. Valerie Alderson, "Measuring the Value of a Managed WOM Program in Test & Control Markets," *BzzAgent Inc.*, 2007.
31. Suzanne Vranica, "Marketers Aim New Ads at Video iPod Users," *Wall Street Journal*, January 31, 2006; Kevin Redmond, "GPS + Mobile Marketing = Goodness," *Barbarian Blog*, February 21, 2009.
32. Bruce Horovitz, "In Trend Toward Vanity Food, It's Getting Personal," *USA Today*, August 9, 2006.
33. Josh Catone, "15 Companies That Really Get Corporate Blogging," www.sitepoint.com.
34. "Intranet Case Study: GM's mySocrates," www.comunitelligence.com.
35. Gail McGovern and John A. Quelch, "The Fall and Rise of the CMO," *Strategy + Business*, Winter 2004.
36. Richard Rawlinson, "Beyond Brand Management," *Strategy + Business*, Summer 2006.
37. Jennifer Rooney, "As If You Didn't Know by Now, It's About the Bottom Line for CMOs," *Advertising Age*, May 5, 2008, pp. 3–57.
38. Elisabeth Sullivan, "Solving the CMO Puzzle," *Marketing News*, March 30, 2009, p. 12.
39. Constantine von Hoffman, "Armed with Intelligence," *Brandweek*, May 29, 2006, pp. 17–20.
40. "China's Second Biggest PC Maker to Push Windows," www.digitalworldtokyo.com, April 15, 2006.
41. Robert J. Keith, "The Marketing Revolution," *Journal of Marketing* 24 (January 1960), pp. 35–38; John B. McKitterick, "What Is the Marketing Management Concept?" Frank M. Bass, ed., *The Frontiers of Marketing Thought and Action* (Chicago: American Marketing Association, 1957), pp. 71–82; Fred J. Borch, "The Marketing Philosophy as a Way of Business Life," *The Marketing Concept: Its Meaning to Management* (Marketing series, no. 99; New York: American Management Association, 1957), pp. 3–5.
42. Theodore Levitt, "Marketing Myopia," *Harvard Business Review*, July–August 1960, p. 50.
43. Rohit Deshpande and John U. Farley, "Measuring Market Orientation: Generalization and Synthesis," *Journal of Market-Focused Management* 2 (1998), pp. 213–32; Ajay K. Kohli and Bernard J. Jaworski, "Market Orientation: The Construct, Research Propositions, and Managerial Implications," *Journal of Marketing* 54 (April 1990), pp. 1–18; John C. Narver and Stanley F. Slater, "The Effect of a Market Orientation on Business Profitability," *Journal of Marketing* 54 (October 1990), pp. 20–35.
44. Evert Gummesson, *Total Relationship Marketing* (Boston: Butterworth-Heinemann, 1999); Regis McKenna, *Relationship Marketing* (Reading, MA: Addison-Wesley, 1991); Martin Christopher, Adrian Payne, and David Ballantyne, *Relationship Marketing: Bringing Quality, Customer Service, and Marketing Together* (Oxford, UK: Butterworth-Heinemann, 1991).
45. James C. Anderson, Hakan Hakansson, and Jan Johanson, "Dyadic Business Relationships within a Business Network Context," *Journal of Marketing* 58 (October 15, 1994), pp. 1–15.
46. Larry Selden and Yoko S. Selden, "Profitable Customer: The Key to Great Brands," *Advertising Age*, July 10, 2006, p. S7; Larry Selden and Geoffrey Colvin, *Angel Customers and Demon Customers* (New York, NY: Portfolio, 2003).
47. Allison Fass, "Theirspace.com," *Forbes*, May 8, 2006, pp. 122–24.
48. Paula Andruss, "Employee Ambassadors," *Marketing News*, December 15, 2008, pp. 26–27; www.snowshoemtn.com.
49. Christian Homburg, John P. Workman Jr., and Harley Krohmen, "Marketing's Influence within the Firm," *Journal of Marketing* 63 (January 1999), pp. 1–15.
50. Robert Shaw and David Merrick, *Marketing Payback: Is Your Marketing Profitable?* (London, UK: Pearson Education, 2005).
51. Rajendra Sisodia, David Wolfe, and Jagdish Sheth, *Firms of Endearment: How World-Class Companies Profit from Passion* (Upper Saddle River, NJ: Wharton School Publishing, 2007).
52. If choosing to develop a strategic corporate social responsibility program, see Michael E. Porter and Mark R. Kramer, "Strategy and Society: The Link between Competitive Advantage and Corporate Social Responsibility," *Harvard Business Review*, December 2006, pp. 78–92.
53. Jeffrey Hollender and Stephen Fenichell, *What Matters Most* (New York: Basic Books, 2004), p. 168.
54. Tara Weiss, "Special Report: Going Green," *Forbes.com*, July 3, 2007; Matthew Grimm, "Progressive Business," *Brandweek*, November 28, 2005, pp. 16–26.
55. E. Jerome McCarthy and William D. Perreault, *Basic Marketing: A Global-Managerial Approach*, 14th ed. (Homewood, IL: McGraw-Hill/Irwin, 2002).
56. Joann Muller, "Ford: Why It's Worse Than You Think," *BusinessWeek*, June 25, 2001; Ford 1999 Annual Report; Greg Keenan, "Six Degrees of Perfection," *Globe and Mail*, December 20, 2000.

Chapter 2

1. Catherine Holahan, "Yahoo!'s Bid to Think Small," *BusinessWeek*, February 26, 2007, p. 94; Ben Elgin, "Yahoo!'s Boulevard of Broken Dreams," *BusinessWeek*, March 13, 2006, pp. 76–77; Justin Hibbard, "How Yahoo! Gave Itself a Face-Lift," *BusinessWeek*, October 9, 2006, pp. 74–77; Kevin J. Delaney, "As Yahoo! Falts, Executive's Memo Calls for Overhaul," *Wall Street Journal*, November 18, 2006; "Yahoo!'s Personality Crisis," *Economist*, August 13, 2005, pp. 49–50; Fred Vogelstein, "Yahoo!'s Brilliant Solution," *Fortune*, August 8, 2005, pp. 42–55.
2. Nirmalya Kumar, *Marketing as Strategy: The CEO's Agenda for Driving Growth and Innovation* (Boston:

- Harvard Business School Press, 2004); Frederick E. Webster Jr., "The Future Role of Marketing in the Organization," Donald R. Lehmann and Katherine Jocz, eds., *Reflections on the Futures of Marketing* (Cambridge, MA: Marketing Science Institute, 1997), pp. 39–66.
3. Michael E. Porter, *Competitive Advantage: Creating and Sustaining Superior Performance* (New York: Free Press, 1985).
 4. For an academic treatment of benchmarking, see Douglas W. Vorhies and Neil A. Morgan, "Benchmarking Marketing Capabilities for Sustained Competitive Advantage," *Journal of Marketing* 69 (January 2005), pp. 80–94.
 5. Michael Hammer and James Champy, *Reengineering the Corporation: A Manifesto for Business Revolution* (New York: Harper Business, 1993).
 6. Ibid.; Jon R. Katzenbach and Douglas K. Smith, *The Wisdom of Teams: Creating the High-Performance Organization* (Boston: Harvard Business School Press, 1993).
 7. Sachi Izumi, "Sony to Halve Suppliers," *Reuters*, May 21, 2009.
 8. C. K. Prahalad and Gary Hamel, "The Core Competence of the Corporation," *Harvard Business Review*, May–June 1990, pp. 79–91.
 9. George S. Day, "The Capabilities of Market-Driven Organizations," *Journal of Marketing* 58 (October 1994), p. 38.
 10. George S. Day and Paul J. H. Schoemaker, *Peripheral Vision: Detecting the Weak Signals That Will Make or Break Your Company* (Cambridge, MA: Harvard Business School Press, 2006); Paul J. H. Schoemaker and George S. Day, "How to Make Sense of Weak Signals," *MIT Sloan Management Review* (Spring 2009), pp. 81–89.
 11. "Kodak Plans to Cut Up to 5,000 More Jobs," *Bloomberg News*, February 8, 2007; Leon Lazaroff, "Kodak's Big Picture Focusing on Image Change," *Chicago Tribune*, January 29, 2006.
 12. *Pew Internet and American Life Project Survey*, November–December 2000.
 13. Peter Drucker, *Management: Tasks, Responsibilities and Practices* (New York: Harper and Row, 1973), chapter 7.
 14. Kawasaki also humorously suggests checking out comic strip character Dilbert's mission statement generator first if one has to be developed by the organization: *Dilbert.com*.
 15. *The Economist: Business Miscellany* (London: Profile Books Ltd, 2005), pp. 32–33.
 16. Peter Freedman, "The Age of the Hollow Company," *TimesOnline*, April 25, 2004; *Pew Internet and American Life Project Survey*, November–December 2000.
 17. Jeffrey F. Rayport and Bernard J. Jaworski, *e-commerce* (New York: McGraw-Hill, 2001), p. 116.
 18. Tilman Kemmler, Monika Kubicová, Robert Musslewhite, and Rodney Prezeau, "E-Performance II—The Good, the Bad, and the Merely Average," an exclusive to *mckinseyquarterly.com*, 2001.
 19. Bruce Horowitz, "Campbell's 10-Year Goal to Clean Up a Soupy Mess," *USA Today*, January 26, 2009, p. 1B.
 20. Dorothy Pomerantz, "Leading Man," *Forbes*, May 19, 2008, p. 82–97; Shira Ovide, "Ad Slump, Web Charges Hurt News Corp.," *Wall Street Journal*, August 6, 2009, p. B4.
 21. This section is based on Robert M. Grant, *Contemporary Strategy Analysis*, 7th ed. (New York: John Wiley & Sons, 2009), chapter 17.
 22. Tom Lowry, "ESPN's Cell Phone Fumble," *BusinessWeek*, October 30, 2006, p. 26.
 23. Jesse Eisinger, "The Marriage from Hell," *Condé Nast Portfolio*, February 2008, pp. 84–88, 132.
 24. Tim Goodman, "NBC Everywhere?" *San Francisco Chronicle*, September 4, 2003.
 25. Jon Fortt, "Mark Hurd, Superstar," *Fortune*, June 9, 2008, pp. 35–40.
 26. Jena McGregor, "The World's Most Innovative Companies," *BusinessWeek*, April 24, 2006, pp. 63–74.
 27. E. Jerome McCarthy, *Basic Marketing: A Managerial Approach*, 12th ed. (Homewood, IL: Irwin, 1996).
 28. Paul J. H. Shoemaker, "Scenario Planning: A Tool for Strategic Thinking," *Sloan Management Review* (Winter 1995), pp. 25–40.
 29. Ronald Grover, "Hollywood Ponders a Post-DVD Future," *BusinessWeek*, March 2, 2009, p. 56; Brooks Barnes, "Movie Studios See a Threat in Growth of Redbox," *New York Times*, September 7, 2009.
 30. Philip Kotler, *Kotler on Marketing* (New York: Free Press, 1999).
 31. Ibid.
 32. Phaedra Hise, "Was It Time to Go Downmarket?" *Inc.*, September 2006, p. 47; Patrick J. Sauer, "Returning to Its Roots," *Inc.*, November 2007; www.loanbright.com.
 33. Dominic Dodd and Ken Favaro, "Managing the Right Tension," *Harvard Business Review*, December 2006, pp. 62–74.
 34. Michael E. Porter, *Competitive Strategy: Techniques for Analyzing Industries and Competitors* (New York: Free Press, 1980), chapter 2.
 35. Michael E. Porter, "What Is Strategy?" *Harvard Business Review*, November–December 1996, pp. 61–78.
 36. For some readings on strategic alliances, see John R. Harbison and Peter Pekar, *Smart Alliances: A Practical Guide to Repeatable Success* (San Francisco, CA: Jossey-Bass, 1998); Peter Lorange and Johan Roos, *Strategic Alliances: Formation, Implementation and Evolution* (Cambridge, MA: Blackwell, 1992); Jordan D. Lewis, *Partnerships for Profit: Structuring and Managing Strategic Alliances* (New York: Free Press, 1990).
 37. Bharat Book Bureau, *Strategic Alliances in World Pharma and Biotech Markets*, May 2008.
 38. Kerry Capell, "Vodafone: Embracing Open Source with Open Arms," *BusinessWeek*, April 20, 2009,

- pp. 52–53; “Call the Carabinieri,” *The Economist*, May 16, 2009, p. 75.
39. Robin Cooper and Robert S. Kalpan, “Profit Priorities from Activity-Based Costing,” *Harvard Business Review*, May–June 1991, pp. 130–135.
 40. See Robert S. Kaplan and David P. Norton, *The Balanced Scorecard: Translating Strategy into Action* (Boston: Harvard Business School Press, 1996) as a tool for monitoring stakeholder satisfaction.
 41. Thomas J. Peters and Robert H. Waterman Jr., *In Search of Excellence: Lessons from America’s Best-Run Companies* (New York: Harper and Row, 1982), pp. 9–12.
 42. John P. Kotter and James L. Heskett, *Corporate Culture and Performance* (New York: Free Press, 1992); Stanley M. Davis, *Managing Corporate Culture* (Cambridge, MA: Ballinger, 1984); Terrence E. Deal and Allan A. Kennedy, *Corporate Cultures: The Rites and Rituals of Corporate Life* (Reading, MA: Addison-Wesley, 1982); “Corporate Culture,” *BusinessWeek*, October 27, 1980, pp. 148–160.
 43. Marian Burk Wood, *The Marketing Plan: A Handbook* (Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2003).
 44. Donald R. Lehmann and Russell S. Winer, *Product Management*, 3rd ed. (Boston: McGraw-Hill/Irwin, 2001).
 45. David B. Hertz, “Risk Analysis in Capital Investment,” *Harvard Business Review*, January–February 1964, pp. 96–106.

Chapter 3

1. Susan Warren, “Pillow Talk: Stackers Outnumber Plumpers; Don’t Mention Drool,” *Wall Street Journal*, January 8, 1998.
2. Ronald D. Michman, Edward M. Mazze, and Alan J. Greco, *Lifestyle Marketing: Reaching the New American Consumer* (Westport: Praeger, 2008).
3. “Insights,” *Nielsen*, www.claritas.com/target-marketing/resources/case-study/michigan-economic-development-corp.jsp.
4. “Mobile Access to Inventory Data Reduces Back Orders by 80 Percent,” www.microsoft.com/casestudies; “Smarter Supply Chain Utilization for the Retailer,” www.microsoft.com/casestudies; “Ten Ways to Reduce Inventory While Maintaining or Improving Service,” www.microsoft.com/casestudies.
5. “Vendor-Managed Inventory in Consumer Electronics and Durables,” *The Supply Chain Company*, www.i2.com/industries/consumer_industries/vmi/vmi_case_study.cfm.
6. William Holstein, “The Dot Com within Ford,” *BusinessWeek*, January 30, 2000.
7. Mara Der Hovanesian, “Wells Fargo,” *BusinessWeek*, November 24, 2004, p. 96.
8. Jeff Zabin, “The Importance of Being Analytical,” *Brandweek*, July 24, 2006, p. 21; Stephen Baker, “Math Will Rock Your World,” *BusinessWeek*, January 23, 2006, pp. 54–62; Michelle Kessler and Byron Acohido, “Data Miners Dig a Little Deeper,” *USA Today*, July 11, 2006.
9. Leonard M. Fuld, “Staying a Step Ahead of the Rest,” *Chief Executive* 218 (June 2006), p. 32.
10. “Spies, Lies & KPMG,” *BusinessWeek*, February 26, 2007.
11. Jennifer Esty, “Those Wacky Customers!” *Fast Company*, January 2004, p. 40.
12. Helen Coster, “Shopping Cart Psychology,” *Forbes*, September 7, 2009, pp. 64–65.
13. Sara Steindorf, “Shoppers Spy on Those Who Serve,” *Christian Science Monitor*, May 28, 2002; Edward F. McQuarrie, *Customer Visits: Building a Better Market Focus*, 2nd ed. (Newbury Park, CA: Sage Press, 1998).
14. Shirely S. Wang, “Heath Care Taps ‘Mystery Shoppers,’” *Wall Street Journal*, August 10, 2006.
15. Heather Green, “It Takes a Web Village,” *Business Week*, September 4, 2006, p. 66.
16. Amy Merrick, “Counting on the Census,” *Wall Street Journal*, February 14, 2001.
17. Kim Girard, “Strategies to Turn Stealth into Wealth,” *Business 2.0*, May 2003, p. 66.
18. “The Blogs in the Corporate Machine,” *The Economist*, February 11, 2006, pp. 55–56; also adapted from Robin T. Peterson and Zhilin Yang, “Web Product Reviews Help Strategy,” *Marketing News*, April 7, 2004, p. 18.
19. American Productivity & Quality Center, “User-Driven Competitive Intelligence: Crafting the Value Proposition,” December 3–4, 2002.
20. Alex Wright, “Mining the Web for Feelings, Not Facts,” *New York Times*, August 24, 2009; Sarah E. Needleman, “For Companies, a Tweet in Time Can Avert PR Mess,” *Wall Street Journal*, August 3, 2009, p. B6.
21. See *BadFads Museum*, www.badfads.com, for examples of fads and collectibles through the years.
22. Katy McLaughlin, “Macaroni Grill’s Order: Cut Calories, Keep Customers,” *Wall Street Journal*, September 16, 2009, p. B6.
23. John Naisbitt and Patricia Aburdene, *Megatrends 2000* (New York: Avon Books, 1990).
24. Indata, *IN* (June 2006), p. 27.
25. World POPClock, U.S. Census Bureau, www.census.gov, 2009.
26. See Donella H. Meadows, Dennis L. Meadows, and Jorgen Randers, *Beyond Limits* (White River Junction, VT: Chelsea Green, 1993) for some commentary; <http://geography.about.com/od/obtainpopulationdata/a/worldvillage.htm>.
27. “World Development Indicators Database,” *World Bank*, <http://site/resources.worldbank.org/DATASTATISTICS/Resources/POP.pdf>, September 15, 2009; “World Population Growth,” www.worldbank.org/depweb/english/beyond/beyondco/beg_03.pdf.
28. Andrew Zolli, “Demographics: The Population Hourglass,” *Fast Company*, www.fastcompany.com/magazine/103/open_essay-demographics.html, December 19, 2007.
29. Brian Grow, “Hispanic Nation,” *BusinessWeek*, March 15, 2004, pp. 58–70.

30. Queena Sook Kim, "Fisher-Price Reaches for Hispanics," *Wall Street Journal*, November 1, 2004.
31. For descriptions on the buying habits and marketing approaches to African Americans and Hispanics, see M. Isabel Valdes, *Marketing to American Latinos: A Guide to the In-Culture Approach, Part II* (Ithaca, NY: Paramount Market Publishing, 2002); Alfred L. Schreiber, *Multicultural Marketing* (Lincolnwood, IL: NTC Business Books, 2001).
32. Jacquelyn Lynn, "Tapping the Riches of Bilingual Markets," *Management Review*, March 1995, pp. 56–61; Mark R. Forehand and Rohit Deshpandé, "What We See Makes Us Who We Are: Priming Ethnic Self-Awareness and Advertising Response," *Journal of Marketing Research* 38 (August 2001), pp. 336–48.
33. Tennille M. Robinson, "Tapping into Black Buying Power," *Black Enterprise* 36 (January 2006), p. 64.
34. *The Central Intelligence Agency's World Factbook*, www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook, December 9, 2010.
35. "Projections of the Number of Households and Families in the United States: 1995–2010, P25–1129," *U.S. Department of Commerce, Bureau of the Census*, www.census.gov/prod/1/pop/p25-1129.pdf, December 9, 2010.
36. Michelle Conlin, "Unmarried America," *BusinessWeek*, October 20, 2003, pp. 106–116; James Morrow, "A Place for One," *American Demographics*, November 2003, pp. 25–30.
37. Rebecca Gardyn, "A Market Kept in the Closet," *American Demographics*, November 2001, pp. 37–43.
38. Nanette Byrnes, "Secrets of the Male Shopper," *BusinessWeek*, September 4, 2006, p. 44.
39. Elisabeth Sullivan, "The Age of Prudence," *Marketing News*, April 15, 2009, pp. 8–11; Steve Hamm, "The New Age of Frugality," *BusinessWeek*, October 20, 2008, pp. 55–60; Jessica Deckler, "Never Pay Retail Again," *CNNMoney.com*, May 30, 2008.
40. David Welch, "The Incredible Shrinking Boomer Economy," *BusinessWeek*, August 3, 2009, pp. 27–30.
41. Julie Schlosser, "Infosys U.," *Fortune*, March 20, 2006, pp. 41–42.
42. Pamela Paul, "Corporate Responsibility," *American Demographics*, May 2002, pp. 24–25.
43. Stephen Baker, "Wiser about the Web," *BusinessWeek*, March 27, 2006, pp. 53–57.
44. "Clearing House Suit Chronology," *Associated Press*, January 26, 2001; Paul Wenske, "You Too Could Lose \$19,000!" *Kansas City Star*, October 31, 1999.
45. Laura Zinn, "Teens: Here Comes the Biggest Wave Yet," *BusinessWeek*, April 11, 2004, pp. 76–86.
46. Chris Taylor (ed.), "Go Green. Get Rich." *Business 2.0*, January/February 2007, pp. 68–79.
47. Subhabrata Bobby Banerjee, Easwar S. Iyer, and Rajiv K Kashyap, "Corporate Environmentalism: Antecedents and Influence of Industry Type," *Journal of Marketing* 67 (April 2003), pp. 106–22.
48. Chris Taylor, ed., "Go Green. Get Rich." *Business 2.0*, January/February 2007, pp. 68–79.
49. See Dorothy Cohen, *Legal Issues on Marketing Decision Making* (Cincinnati: South-Western, 1995).
50. Rebecca Gardyn, "Swap Meet," *American Demographics*, July 2001, pp. 51–55.
51. Pamela Paul, "Mixed Signals," *American Demographics*, July 2001, pp. 45–49.
52. Conference Summary, "Excelling in Today's Multimedia World," Economist Conferences' Fourth Annual Marketing Roundtable, Landor, March 2006.
53. For a good discussion and illustration, see Roger J. Best, *Market-Based Management*, 4th ed. (Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2005).
54. For further discussion, see Gary L. Lilien, Philip Kotler, and K. Sridhar Moorthy, *Marketing Models* (Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 1992).
55. www.naics.com; www.census.gov/epcd/naics02, December 9, 2010.
56. Stanley F. Slater and Eric M. Olson, "Mix and Match," *Marketing Management*, July–August 2006, pp. 32–37; Brian Sternthal and Alice M. Tybout, "Segmentation and Targeting," Dawn Iacobucci, ed., *Kellogg on Marketing* (New York: John Wiley & Sons, 2001), pp. 3–30.
57. Stephanie Clifford, "Measuring the Results of an Ad Right Down to the City Block," *New York Times*, August 5, 2009.
58. For an excellent overview of market forecasting, see Scott Armstrong, ed., *Principles of Forecasting: A Handbook for Researchers and Practitioners* (Norwell, MA: Kluwer Academic Publishers, 2001) and his Web site: www.forecastingprinciples.com; Also see Roger J. Best, "An Experiment in Delphi Estimation in Marketing Decision Making," *Journal of Marketing Research* 11 (November 1974), pp. 447–52; Norman Dalkey and Olaf Helmer, "An Experimental Application of the Delphi Method to the Use of Experts," *Management Science*, April 1963, pp. 458–67.

Chapter 4

1. Jia Lynn Yang, "The Bottom Line," *Fortune*, September 1, 2008, pp. 107–12 Jack Neff, "From Mucus to Maxi Pads: Marketing's Dirtiest Jobs," *Advertising Age*, February 16, 2009, p. 9.
2. See Robert Schieffer, *Ten Key Customer Insights: Unlocking the Mind of the Market* (Mason, OH: Thomson, 2005) for a comprehensive, in-depth discussion of how to generate customer insights to drive business results.
3. Jenn Abelson, "Gillette Sharpens Its Focus on Women," *Boston Globe*, January 4, 2009; A.G. Lafley, interview, "It Was a No-Brainer," *Fortune*, February 21, 2005, p. 96; Naomi Aoki, "Gillette Hopes to Create a Buzz with Vibrating Women's Razor," *Boston Globe*, December 17, 2004; Chris Reidy, "The Unveiling of a New Venus," *Boston Globe*, November 3, 2000.
4. Natalie Zmuda, "Tropicana Line's Sales Plunge 20% Post-Rebranding," *Advertising Age*, April 2, 2009.
5. "2009 Global Market Research Report," *Esomar*, www.esomar.org.

6. Melanie Haiken, "Tuning In to Crowdcasting," *Business 2.0*, November 2006, pp. 66–68.
7. Michael Fielding, "Special Delivery: UPS Conducts Surveys to Help Customers Export to China," *Marketing News*, February 1, 2007, pp. 13–14.
8. "Would You Fly in Chattering Class?" *The Economist*, September 9, 2006, p. 63.
9. For some background information on in-flight Internet service, see "Boeing In-Flight Internet Plan Goes Airborne," *Associated Press*, April 18, 2004; John Blau, "In-Flight Internet Service Ready for Takeoff," *IDG News Service*, June 14, 2002; "In-Flight Dogfight," *Business2.com*, January 9, 2001, pp. 84–91.
10. For a discussion of the decision-theory approach to the value of research, see Donald R. Lehmann, Sunil Gupta, and Joel Steckel, *Market Research* (Reading, MA: Addison-Wesley, 1997).
11. Gregory Solman, "Finding Car Buyers at Their Home (sites)," *Adweek*, August 21–28, 2006, p. 8.
12. Linda Tischler, "Every Move You Make," *Fast Company*, April 2004, pp. 73–75; Allison Stein Wellner, "Look Who's Watching," *Continental*, April 2003, pp. 39–41.
13. For a detailed review of some relevant academic work, see Eric J. Arnould and Amber Epp, "Deep Engagement with Consumer Experience," Rajiv Grover and Marco Vriens, eds., *Handbook of Marketing Research* (Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage Publications, 2006); For a range of academic discussion, see the following special issue, "Can Ethnography Uncover Richer Consumer Insights?" *Journal of Advertising Research* 46 (September 2006); For some practical tips, see Richard Durante and Michael Feehan, "Leverage Ethnography to Improve Strategic Decision Making," *Marketing Research* (Winter 2005).
14. Eric J. Arnould and Linda L. Price, "Market-Oriented Ethnography Revisited," *Journal of Advertising Research* 46 (September 2006), pp. 251–62; Eric J. Arnould and Melanie Wallendorf, "Market-Oriented Ethnography: Interpretation Building and Marketing Strategy Formulation," *Journal of Marketing Research* 31 (November 1994), pp. 484–504.
15. "Case Study: Bank of America," Inside Innovation, *BusinessWeek*, June 19, 2006; Spencer E. Ante, "Inprogress," *IN*, June 2006, pp. 28–29; *Bank of America*, www.bankofamerica.com.
16. Helen Coster, "Shopping Cart Psychology," *Forbes*, September 7, 2009, pp. 64–65.
17. Andrew Kaplan, "Mass Appeal," *Beverage World*, February 2007, pp. 48–49.
18. Michael Fielding, "Shift the Focus," *Marketing News*, September 1, 2006, pp. 18–20.
19. Piet Levy, "In with the Old, in Spite of the New," *Marketing News*, May 30, 2009, p. 19.
20. Eric Schellhorn, "A Tsunami of Surveys Washes over Consumers," *Christian Science Monitor*, October 2, 2006, p. 13.
21. Catherine Marshall and Gretchen B. Rossman, *Designing Qualitative Research*, 4th ed. (Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage Publications, 2006); Bruce L. Berg, *Qualitative Research Methods for the Social Sciences*, 6th ed. (Boston: Allyn & Bacon, 2006); Norman K. Denzin and Yvonna S. Lincoln, eds., *The Sage Handbook of Qualitative Research*, 3rd ed. (Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage Publications, 2005); Linda Tischler, "Every Move You Make," *Fast Company*, April 2004, pp. 73–75.
22. Paula Andruss, "Keeping Both Eyes on Quality," *Marketing News*, September 15, 2008, pp. 22–23.
23. Louise Witt, "Inside Intent," *American Demographics*, March 2004, pp. 34–39; Andy Raskin, "A Face Any Business Can Trust," *Business 2.0*, December 2003, pp. 58–60; Gerald Zaltman, "Rethinking Market Research: Putting People Back In," *Journal of Marketing Research* 34 (November 1997), pp. 424–37; Wally Wood, "The Race to Replace Memory," *Marketing and Media Decisions*, July 1986, pp. 166–67; Roger D. Blackwell, James S. Hensel, Michael B. Phillips, and Brian Sternthal, *Laboratory Equipment for Marketing Research* (Dubuque, IA: Kendall/Hunt, 1970); Laurie Burkitt, "Battle for the Brain," *Forbes*, November 16, 2009, pp. 76–77.
24. Stephen Baker, "Wiser about the Web," *BusinessWeek*, March 27, 2006, pp. 54–62.
25. Michael Fielding, "Shift the Focus," *Marketing News*, September 1, 2006, pp. 18–20; Aaron Ukodie, "Worldwide Mobile Phones Reach Four Billion 2008," *allAfrica.com*, <http://allafrica.com/stories/200810070774.html>, October 6, 2008.
26. Kelly K. Spors, "The Customer Knows Best," *Wall Street Journal*, July 13, 2009, p. R5; Susan Kristoff, "Local Motors Breaking Design Rules in Engineering," www.suite.com, October 22, 2009; Emily Sweeney, "Machine Dream," *Boston Globe*, February 1, 2009.
27. Bradley Johnson, "Forget Phone and Mail: Online's the Best Place to Administer Surveys," *Advertising Age*, July 17, 2006, p. 23.
28. Emily Steel, "The New Focus Groups: Online Networks Proprietary Panels Help Consumer Companies Shape Products, Ads," *Wall Street Journal*, January 14, 2008.
29. Elisabeth A. Sullivan, "Delve Deeper," *Marketing News*, April 15, 2008, p. 24.
30. Kate Maddox, "The ROI of Research," *BtoB*, pp. 25, 28.
31. Bradley Johnson, "Online Methods Upend Consumer Survey Business," *Advertising Age*, July 17, 2006.
32. "Survey: Internet Should Remain Open to All," *ConsumerAffairs.com*, www.consumeraffairs.com/news04/2006/01/internet_survey.html, January 25, 2006; "Highlights from the National Consumers League's Survey on Consumers and Communications Technologies: Current and Future Use," www.nclnet.org/research/utilities/telecom_highlights.htm, July 21, 2005; Catherine Arnold, "Not Done Net: New Opportunities Still Exist in Online Research," *Marketing News*, April 1, 2004, p. 17; Louella Miles, "Online, on Tap," *Marketing*, June 16, 2004, pp. 39–40; Suzy Bashford, "The Opinion Formers," *Revolution*, May 2004, pp. 42–46; Nima M. Ray and Sharon W.

- Tabor, "Contributing Factors; Several Issues Affect e-Research Validity," *Marketing News*, September 15, 2003, p. 50; Bob Lamons, "Eureka! Future of B-to-B Research Is Online," *Marketing News*, September 24, 2001, pp. 9–10; Burt Helm, "Online Polls: How Good Are They?" *BusinessWeek*, June 16, 2008, pp. 86–87.
33. *The Nielsen Company*, www.nielsen.com.
 34. Elisabeth Sullivan, "Qual Research by the Numb3rs," *Marketing News*, September 1, 2008.
 35. Deborah L. Vence, "In an Instant: More Researchers Use IM for Fast, Reliable Results," *Marketing News*, March 1, 2006, pp. 53–55.
 36. Catherine Arnold, "Global Perspective: Synovate Exec Discusses Future of International Research," *Marketing News*, May 15, 2004, p. 43; Michael Erard, "For Technology, No Small World after All," *New York Times*, May 6, 2004; Deborah L. Vence, "Global Consistency: Leave It to the Experts," *Marketing News*, April 28, 2003, p. 37.
 37. Jim Stachura and Meg Murphy, "Multicultural Marketing: Why One Size Doesn't Fit All," *MarketingProfs.com*, October 25, 2005.
 38. Michael Fielding, "Global Insights: Synovate's Chedore Discusses MR Trends," *Marketing News*, May 15, 2006, pp. 41–42.
 39. Kevin J. Clancy and Peter C. Krieg, *Counterintuitive Marketing: How Great Results Come from Uncommon Sense* (New York: Free Press, 2000).
 40. See "Special Issue on Managerial Decision Making," *Marketing Science* 18 (1999) for some contemporary perspectives; See also John D. C. Little, "Decision Support Systems for Marketing Managers," *Journal of Marketing* 43 (Summer 1979), p. 11.
 41. *Marketing News* can be found at www.marketingpower.com.
 42. Rajiv Grover and Marco Vriens, "Trusted Advisor: How It Helps Lay the Foundation for Insight," *Handbook of Marketing Research* (Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage Publications, 2006), pp. 3–17; Christine Moorman, Gerald Zaltman, and Rohit Deshpandé, "Relationships between Providers and Users of Market Research: The Dynamics of Trust within and between Organizations," *Journal of Marketing Research* 29 (August 1992), pp. 314–28.
 43. *The Advertising Research Foundation*, www.thearf.org/assets/ogilvy-09.
 44. Adapted from Arthur Shapiro, "Let's Redefine Market Research," *Brandweek*, June 21, 2004, p. 20; Kevin Ohannessian, "Star Wars: Thirty Years of Success," *Fast Company*, May 29, 2007.
 45. Karen V. Beaman, Gregory R. Guy, and Donald E. Sexton, "Managing and Measuring Return on Marketing Investment," The Conference Board Research Report R-1435-08-RR, 2008.
 46. "Report: Marketers Place Priority on Nurturing Existing Customers," <http://directmag.com/roi/0301-customer-satisfaction-retention>.
 47. Factor TG, www.factor-tg.com/ideas/CMO_MPM_Audit_cmo.pdf.
 48. Paul Farris, Neil T. Bendle, Phillip E. Pfeifer, and David J. Reibstein, *Marketing Metrics: 50+ Metrics Every Executive Should Master* (Upper Saddle River, NJ: Pearson Education, 2006); John Davis, *Magic Numbers for Consumer Marketing: Key Measures to Evaluate Marketing Success* (Singapore: John Wiley & Sons, 2005).
 49. Elisabeth Sullivan, "Measure Up," *Marketing News*, May 30, 2009, pp. 8–11.
 50. Michael Krauss, "Which Metrics Matter Most?" *Marketing News*, February 28, 2009, p. 20.
 51. Tim Ambler, *Marketing and the Bottom Line: The New Methods of Corporate Wealth*, 2nd ed. (London: Pearson Education, 2003).
 52. Kusum L. Ailawadi, Donald R. Lehmann, and Scott A. Neslin, "Revenue Premium as an Outcome Measure of Brand Equity," *Journal of Marketing* 67 (October 2003), pp. 1–17.
 53. Tim Ambler, *Marketing and the Bottom Line: The New Methods of Corporate Wealth*, 2nd ed. (London: Pearson Education, 2003).
 54. Josh Bernoff, "Measure What Matters," *Marketing News*, December 15, 2008, p. 22; and information from Servus Credit Union, May 2010.
 55. Gerard J. Tellis, "Modeling Marketing Mix," Rajiv Grover and Marco Vriens, eds., *Handbook of Marketing Research* (Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage Publications, 2006).
 56. Jack Neff, "P&G, Clorox Rediscover Modeling," *Advertising Age*, March 29, 2004, p. 10.
 57. Laura Q. Hughes, "Econometrics Take Root," *Advertising Age*, August 5, 2002, p. S-4.
 58. David J. Reibstein, "Connect the Dots," *CMO Magazine*, May 2005.
 59. Jeff Zabin, "Marketing Dashboards: The Visual Display of Marketing Data," *Chief Marketer*, June 26, 2006.
 60. Robert S. Kaplan and David P. Norton, *The Balanced Scorecard* (Boston: Harvard Business School Press, 1996).
 61. Spencer Ante, "Giving the Boss the Big Picture," *BusinessWeek*, February 13, 2006, pp. 48–50.

Chapter 5

1. Louis Columbus, "Lessons Learned in Las Vegas: Loyalty Programs Pay," *CRM Buyer*, July 29, 2005; Oskar Garcia, "Harrah's Broadens Customer Loyalty Program; Monitors Customer Behavior," *Associated Press*, September 27, 2008; Dan Butcher, "Harrah's Casino Chain Runs Mobile Coupon Pilot," *Mobile Marketer*, November 19, 2008; Michael Bush, "Why Harrah's Loyalty Effort Is Industry's Gold Standard," *Advertising Age*, October 5, 2009, p. 8.
2. Robert Schieffer, *Ten Key Consumer Insights* (Mason, OH: Thomson, 2005).
3. Don Peppers and Martha Rogers, "Customers Don't Grow on Trees," *Fast Company*, July 2005, pp. 25–26.

4. For discussion of some of the issues involved, see Glen Urban, *Don't Just Relate—Advocate* (Upper Saddle River, NJ: Pearson Education Wharton School Publishing, 2005).
5. See Glen L. Urban and John R. Hauser, "'Listening In' to Find and Explore New Combinations of Customer Needs," *Journal of Marketing* 68 (April 2004), pp. 72–87.
6. "Customer reviews drive 196% increase in paid search revenue for Office Depot," *Bazaarvoice*, www.bazaarvoice.com/cs_rr_adresults_officedepot.html, 2008.
7. Glen L. Urban, "The Emerging Era of Customer Advocacy," *Sloan Management Review* 45 (2004), pp. 77–82.
8. Steven Burke, "Dell's vs. HP's Value," *CRN*, May 15, 2006, p. 46; David Kirkpatrick, "Dell in the Penalty Box," *Fortune*, September 18, 2006, p. 70.
9. Michael Bush, "Consumers Rate Brands that Give Best Bang for Buck," *Advertising Age*, November 3, 2008, p. 8.
10. Irwin P. Levin and Richard D. Johnson, "Estimating Price–Quality Tradeoffs Using Comparative Judgments," *Journal of Consumer Research* 11 (June 1984), pp. 593–600. Customer-perceived value can be measured as a difference or as a ratio. If total customer value is \$20,000 and total customer cost is \$16,000, then the customer-perceived value is \$4,000 (measured as a difference) or 1.25 (measured as a ratio). Ratios that are used to compare offers are often called *value–price ratios*.
11. Alex Taylor, "Caterpillar: Big Trucks, Big Sales, Big Attitude," *Fortune*, August 20, 2007, pp. 48–53; Tim Kelly, "Squash the Caterpillar," *Forbes*, April 21, 2008, pp. 136–41; Jeff Borden, "Eat My Dust," *Marketing News*, February 1, 2008, pp. 20–22.
12. For more on customer-perceived value, see David C. Swaddling and Charles Miller, *Customer Power* (Dublin, OH: Wellington Press, 2001).
13. Gary Hamel, "Strategy as Revolution," *Harvard Business Review*, July–August 1996, pp. 69–82.
14. "2010 Brand Keys Customer Loyalty Engagement Index," *Brand Keys, Inc.*
15. Michael J. Lanning, *Delivering Profitable Value* (Oxford, UK: Capstone, 1998).
16. Vikas Mittal, Eugene W. Anderson, Akin Sayrak, and Pandu Tadilamalla, "Dual Emphasis and the Long-Term Financial Impact of Customer Satisfaction," *Marketing Science* 24 (Fall 2005), pp. 544–55.
17. Michael Tsiros, Vikas Mittal, and William T. Ross Jr., "The Role of Attributions in Customer Satisfaction: A Reexamination," *Journal of Consumer Research* 31 (September 2004), pp. 476–83; for a succinct review, see Richard L. Oliver, "Customer Satisfaction Research," Rajiv Grover and Marco Vriens, eds., *Handbook of Marketing Research* (Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage Publications, 2006), pp. 569–87.
18. For some provocative analysis and discussion, see Praveen K. Kopalle and Donald R. Lehmann, "Setting Quality Expectations when Entering a Market: What Should the Promise Be?" *Marketing Science* 25 (January–February 2006), pp. 8–24; Susan Fournier and David Glenmick, "Rediscovering Satisfaction," *Journal of Marketing* 63 (October 1999), pp. 5–23.
19. Jennifer Aaker, Susan Fournier, and S. Adam Brasel, "When Good Brands Do Bad," *Journal of Consumer Research* 31 (June 2004), pp. 1–16; Pankaj Aggrawal, "The Effects of Brand Relationship Norms on Consumer Attitudes and Behavior," *Journal of Consumer Research* 31 (June 2004), pp. 87–101.
20. For in-depth discussion, see Michael D. Johnson and Anders Gustafsson, *Improving Customer Satisfaction, Loyalty, and Profit* (San Francisco: Jossey-Bass, 2000).
21. For an interesting analysis of the effects of different types of expectations, see William Boulding, Ajay Kalra, and Richard Staelin, "The Quality Double Whammy," *Marketing Science* 18 (April 1999), pp. 463–84.
22. Neil A. Morgan, Eugene W. Anderson, and Vikas Mittal, "Understanding Firms' Customer Satisfaction Information Usage," *Journal of Marketing* 69 (July 2005), pp. 131–51.
23. Although for moderating factors, see Kathleen Seiders, Glenn B. Voss, Dhruv Grewal, and Andrea L. Godfrey, "Do Satisfied Customers Buy More? Examining Moderating Influences in a Retailing Context," *Journal of Marketing* 69 (October 2005), pp. 26–43.
24. See, for example, Christian Homburg, Nicole Koschate, and Wayne D. Hoyer, "Do Satisfied Customers Really Pay More? A Study of the Relationship between Customer Satisfaction and Willingness to Pay," *Journal of Marketing* 69 (April 2005), pp. 84–96.
25. Claes Fornell, Sunil Mithas, Forrest V. Morgeson III, and M. S. Krishnan, "Customer Satisfaction and Stock Prices: High Returns, Low Risk," *Journal of Marketing* 70 (January 2006), pp. 3–14. See also, Thomas S. Gruca and Lopo L. Rego, "Customer Satisfaction, Cash Flow, and Shareholder Value," *Journal of Marketing* 69 (July 2005), pp. 115–30; Eugene W. Anderson, Claes Fornell, and Sanal K. Mazvancheryl, "Customer Satisfaction and Shareholder Value," *Journal of Marketing* 68 (October 2004), pp. 172–85.
26. Thomas O. Jones and W. Earl Sasser Jr., "Why Satisfied Customers Defect," *Harvard Business Review*, November–December 1995, pp. 88–99.
27. Companies should also note that managers and salespeople can manipulate customer satisfaction ratings. They can be especially nice to customers just before the survey. They can also try to exclude unhappy customers. Another danger is that if customers know the company will go out of its way to please them, some may express high dissatisfaction in order to receive more concessions.
28. Jennifer Rooney, "Winning Hearts and Minds," *Advertising Age*, July 10, 2006, pp. S10–13.

29. For an empirical comparison of different methods to measure customer satisfaction, see Neil A. Morgan and Lopo Leotto Rego, "The Value of Different Customer Satisfaction and Loyalty Metrics in Predicting Business Performance," *Marketing Science* 25 (September–October 2006), pp. 426–39.
30. Frederick K. Reichheld, "The One Number You Need to Grow," *Harvard Business Review*, December 2003, pp. 46–54.
31. James C. Ward and Amy L. Ostrom, "Complaining to the Masses: The Role of Protest Framing in Customer-Created Complaint Sites," *Journal of Consumer Research* 33 (September 2006), pp. 220–30; Kim Hart, "Angry Customers Use Web to Shame Firms," *Washington Post*, July 5, 2006.
32. Eugene W. Anderson and Claes Fornell, "Foundations of the American Customer Satisfaction Index," *Total Quality Management* 11 (September 2000), pp. S869–82; Claes Fornell, Michael D. Johnson, Eugene W. Anderson, Jaesung Cha, and Barbara Everitt Bryant, "The American Customer Satisfaction Index: Nature, Purpose, and Findings," *Journal of Marketing* 60 (October 1996), pp. 7–18.
33. Technical Assistance Research Programs (Tarp), U.S. Office of Consumer Affairs Study on Complaint Handling in America, 1986.
34. Stephen S. Tax and Stephen W. Brown, "Recovering and Learning from Service Failure," *Sloan Management Review* 40 (Fall 1998), pp. 75–88; Ruth Bolton and Tina M. Bronkhorst, "The Relationship between Customer Complaints to the Firm and Subsequent Exit Behavior," *Advances in Consumer Research*, vol. 22 (Provo, UT: Association for Consumer Research, 1995), pp. 94–100; Roland T. Rust, Bala Subramanian, and Mark Wells, "Making Complaints a Management Tool," *Marketing Management* 1 (March 1992), pp. 40–45; Karl Albrecht and Ron Zemke, *Service America!* (Homewood, IL: Dow Jones–Irwin, 1985), pp. 6–7.
35. Christian Homburg and Andreas Fürst, "How Organizational Complaint Handling Drives Customer Loyalty: An Analysis of the Mechanistic and the Organic Approach," *Journal of Marketing* 69 (July 2005), pp. 95–114.
36. Philip Kotler, *Kotler on Marketing* (New York: Free Press, 1999), pp. 21–22.
37. "Basic Concepts," ASQ, www.asq.org/glossary/q.html, January 16, 2010.
38. Robert D. Buzzell and Bradley T. Gale, "Quality Is King," *The PIMS Principles: Linking Strategy to Performance* (New York: Free Press, 1987), pp. 103–34. (PIMS stands for Profit Impact of Market Strategy.)
39. Brian Hindo, "Satisfaction Not Guaranteed," *BusinessWeek*, June 19, 2006, pp. 32–36.
40. Jena McGregor, "Putting Home Depot's House in Order," *BusinessWeek*, May 14, 2009; "Home Depot CEO, Sorry We Let You Down," *MSN Money*, www.moneycentral.msn.com, March 13, 2007.
41. Lerzan Aksoy, Timothy L. Keiningham, and Terry G. Vavra, "Nearly Everything You Know about Loyalty Is Wrong," *Marketing News*, October 1, 2005, pp. 20–21; Timothy L. Keiningham, Terry G. Vavra, Lerzan Aksoy, and Henri Wallard, *Loyalty Myths* (Hoboken, NJ: John Wiley & Sons, 2005).
42. Werner J. Reinartz and V. Kumar, "The Impact of Customer Relationship Characteristics on Profitable Lifetime Duration," *Journal of Marketing* 67 (January 2003), pp. 77–99; Werner J. Reinartz and V. Kumar, "On the Profitability of Long-Life Customers in a Noncontractual Setting: An Empirical Investigation and Implications for Marketing," *Journal of Marketing* 64 (October 2000), pp. 17–35.
43. Rakesh Niraj, Mahendra Gupta, and Chakravarthi Narasimhan, "Customer Profitability in a Supply Chain," *Journal of Marketing* 65 (July 2001), pp. 1–16.
44. Thomas M. Petro, "Profitability: The Fifth 'P' of Marketing," *Bank Marketing*, September 1990, pp. 48–52; "Who Are Your Best Customers?" *Bank Marketing*, October 1990, pp. 48–52.
45. "Easier Than ABC," *Economist*, October 25, 2003, p. 56; Robert S. Kaplan and Steven R. Anderson, *Time-Driven Activity Based Costing* (Boston MA: Harvard Business School Press, 2007); "Activity-Based Accounting" *Economist*, June 29, 2009.
46. V. Kumar, "Customer Lifetime Value," Rajiv Grover and Marco Vriens, eds., *Handbook of Marketing Research* (Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage Publications, 2006), pp. 602–27; Sunil Gupta, Donald R. Lehmann, and Jennifer Ames Stuart, "Valuing Customers," *Journal of Marketing Research* 61 (February 2004), pp. 7–18; Rajkumar Venkatesan and V. Kumar, "A Customer Lifetime Value Framework for Customer Selection and Resource Allocation Strategy," *Journal of Marketing* 68 (October 2004), pp. 106–25.
47. V. Kumar, "Profitable Relationships," *Marketing Research* 18 (Fall 2006), pp. 41–46.
48. For some recent analysis and discussion, see Michael Haenlein, Andreas M. Kaplan, and Detlef Schoder, "Valuing the Real Option of Abandoning Unprofitable Customers when Calculating Customer Lifetime Value," *Journal of Marketing* 70 (July 2006), pp. 5–20; Teck-Hua Ho, Young-Hoon Park, and Yong-Pin Zhou, "Incorporating Satisfaction into Customer Value Analysis: Optimal Investment in Lifetime Value," *Marketing Science* 25 (May–June 2006), pp. 260–77; and Peter S. Fader, Bruce G. S. Hardie, and Ka Lok Lee, "RFM and CLV: Using Iso-Value Curves for Customer Base Analysis," *Journal of Marketing Research* 62 (November 2005), pp. 415–30; V. Kumar, Rajkumar Venkatesan, Tim Bohling, and Denise Beckmann, "The Power of CLV: Managing Customer Lifetime Value at IBM," *Marketing Science* 27 (2008), pp. 585–99.
49. Nicole E. Coviello, Roderick J. Brodie, Peter J. Danaher, and Wesley J. Johnston, "How Firms Relate to Their Markets: An Empirical Examination of Contemporary Marketing Practices," *Journal of*

- Marketing* 66 (July 2002), pp. 33–46. For a comprehensive set of articles from a variety of perspectives on brand relationships, see Deborah J. MacInnis, C. Whan Park, and Joseph R. Preister, eds., *Handbook of Brand Relationships* (Armonk, NY: M. E. Sharpe, 2009).
50. For an up-to-date view of academic perspectives, see the articles contained in the Special Section on Customer Relationship Management, *Journal of Marketing* 69 (October 2005). For a study of the processes involved, see Werner Reinartz, Manfred Kraft, and Wayne D. Hoyer, “The Customer Relationship Management Process: Its Measurement and Impact on Performance,” *Journal of Marketing Research* 61 (August 2004), pp. 293–305.
 51. Nora A. Aufreiter, David Elzinga, and Jonathan W. Gordon, “Better Branding,” *The McKinsey Quarterly* 4 (2003), pp. 29–39.
 52. Michael J. Lanning, *Delivering Profitable Value* (New York: Basic Books, 1998).
 53. Kenneth Hein, “Satisfying a Publicity Jones with Hemp, Love Potions,” *Brandweek*, March 13, 2006, p. 14; Corporate Design Foundation, “Keep Up with the Jones, Dude!” *BusinessWeek*, October 26, 2005; Ryan Underwood, “Jones Soda Secret,” *Fast Company*, March 2005, p. 74; Maggie Overfelt, “Cult Brand Jones Soda Fights for Survival,” *CNNMoney.com*, October 10, 2008.
 54. Susan Stellin, “For Many Online Companies, Customer Service Is Hardly a Priority,” *New York Times*, February 19, 2001; Michelle Johnson, “Getting Ready for the Onslaught,” *Boston Globe*, November 4, 1999.
 55. Julie Jargon, “Domino’s IT Staff Delivers Slick Site, Ordering System,” *Wall Street Journal*, November 24, 2009; Bruce Horovitz, “Where’s Your Domino’s Pizza? Track It Online,” *USA Today*, January 30, 2008; Domino’s Pizza, www.dominosbiz.com, January 16, 2010.
 56. James H. Donnelly Jr., Leonard L. Berry, and Thomas W. Thompson, *Marketing Financial Services—A Strategic Vision* (Homewood, IL: Dow Jones–Irwin, 1985), p. 113.
 57. Seth Godin, *Permission Marketing: Turning Strangers into Friends, and Friends into Customers* (New York: Simon & Schuster, 1999). See also Susan Fournier, Susan Dobscha, and David Mick, “Preventing the Premature Death of Relationship Marketing,” *Harvard Business Review*, January–February 1998, pp. 42–51.
 58. Don Peppers and Martha Rogers, *One-to-One B2B: Customer Development Strategies for the Business-to-Business World* (New York: Doubleday, 2001); Peppers and Rogers, *The One-to-One Future: Building Relationships One Customer at a Time* (London: Piatkus Books, 1996); Don Peppers and Martha Rogers, *The One-to-One Manager: Real-World Lessons in Customer Relationship Management* (New York: Doubleday, 1999); Don Peppers, Martha Rogers, and Bob Dorf, *The One-to-One Fieldbook: The Complete Toolkit for Implementing a One-to-One Marketing Program* (New York: Bantam, 1999); Don Peppers and Martha Rogers, *Enterprise One to One: Tools for Competing in the Interactive Age* (New York: Currency, 1997).
 59. Mark Rechtin, “Aston Martin Woos Customers One by One,” *Automotive News*, March 28, 2005.
 60. Stuart Elliott, “Letting Consumers Control Marketing: Priceless,” *New York Times*, October 9, 2006; Todd Wasserman and Jim Edwards, “Marketers’ New World Order,” *Brandweek*, October 9, 2006, pp. 4–6; Heather Green and Robert D. Hof, “Your Attention Please,” *BusinessWeek*, July 24, 2006, pp. 48–53; Brian Sternberg, “The Marketing Maze,” *Wall Street Journal*, July 10, 2006.
 61. Rob Walker, “Amateur Hour, Web Style,” *Fast Company*, October 2007, p. 87.
 62. Ben McConnell and Jackie Huba, “Learning to Leverage the Lunatic Fringe,” *Point*, July–August 2006, pp. 14–15; Michael Krauss, “Work to Convert Customers into Evangelists,” *Marketing News*, December 15, 2006, p. 6; Ben McConnell and Jackie Huba, *Creating Customer Evangelists: How Loyal Customers Become a Loyal Sales Force* (New York: Kaplan Business, 2003).
 63. Jonah Bloom, “The New Realities of a Low Trust Marketing World,” *Advertising Age*, February 13, 2006.
 64. Mylene Mangalindan, “New Marketing Style: Clicks and Mortar,” *Wall Street Journal*, December 21, 2007, p. B5.
 65. Nick Wingfield, “High Scores Matter to Game Makers, Too,” *Wall Street Journal*, September 20, 2007, p. B1.
 66. Candice Choi, “Bloggers Serve Up Opinions,” *Associated Press*, March 23, 2008.
 67. Elisabeth Sullivan, “Consider Your Source,” *Marketing News*, February 15, 2008, pp. 16–19; Mylene Mangalindan, “Web Stores Tap Product Reviews,” *Wall Street Journal*, September 11, 2007.
 68. Erick Schonfeld, “Rethinking the Recommendation Engine,” *Business 2.0*, July 2007, pp. 40–43.
 69. Michael Lewis, “Customer Acquisition Promotions and Customer Asset Value,” *Journal of Marketing Research* 63 (May 2006), pp. 195–203.
 70. Hamish Pringle and Peter Field, “Why Customer Loyalty Isn’t as Valuable as You Think,” *Advertising Age*, March 23, 2009, p. 22.
 71. Werner Reinartz, Jacquelyn S. Thomas, and V. Kumar, “Balancing Acquisition and Retention Resources to Maximize Customer Profitability,” *Journal of Marketing* 69 (January 2005), pp. 63–79.
 72. “Service Invention to Increase Retention,” *CMO Council*, August 3, 2009, www.cmocouncil.org.
 73. Frederick F. Reichheld, “Learning from Customer Defections,” *Harvard Business Review*, March–April 1996, pp. 56–69.
 74. Frederick F. Reichheld, *Loyalty Rules* (Boston: Harvard Business School Press, 2001); Frederick F. Reichheld, *The Loyalty Effect* (Boston: Harvard Business School Press, 1996).

75. Michael D. Johnson, and Fred Selnes, "Diversifying Your Customer Portfolio," *MIT Sloan Management Review* 46 (Spring 2005), pp. 11–14.
76. Tom Ostenon, *Customer Share Marketing* (Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2002); Alan W. H. Grant and Leonard A. Schlesinger, "Realize Your Customer's Full Profit Potential," *Harvard Business Review*, September–October 1995, pp. 59–72.
77. Gail McGovern and Youngme Moon, "Companies and the Customers Who Hate Them," *Harvard Business Review*, June 2007, pp. 78–84.
78. Elisabeth A. Sullivan, "Just Say No," *Marketing News*, April 15, 2008, p. 17.
79. Sunil Gupta and Carl F. Mela, "What Is a Free Customer Worth," *Harvard Business Review*, November 2008, pp. 102–9.
80. Leonard L. Berry and A. Parasuraman, *Marketing Services: Computing through Quality* (New York: Free Press, 1991), pp. 136–42. For an academic examination in a business-to-business context, see Robert W. Palmatier, Srinath Gopalakrishna, and Mark B. Houston, "Returns on Business-to-Business Relationship Marketing Investments: Strategies for Leveraging Profits," *Marketing Science* 25 (September–October 2006), pp. 477–93.
81. Frederick F. Reichheld, "Learning from Customer Defections," *Harvard Business Review*, March 3, 2009, pp. 56–69.
82. Mike White and Teresa Siles, email message, July 14, 2008.
83. Ben McConnell and Jackie Huba, "Learning to Leverage the Lunatic Fringe," *Point*, July–August 2006, pp. 14–15; Michael Krauss, "Work to Convert Customers into Evangelists," *Marketing News*, December 15, 2006, p. 6; Ben McConnell and Jackie Huba, *Creating Customer Evangelists: How Loyal Customers Become a Loyal Sales Force* (New York: Kaplan Business, 2003).
84. Utpal M. Dholakia, "How Consumer Self-Determination Influences Relational Marketing Outcomes: Evidence from Longitudinal Field Studies," *Journal of Marketing Research* 43 (February 2006), pp. 109–20.
85. Allison Enright, "Serve Them Right," *Marketing News*, May 1, 2006, pp. 21–22.
86. For a review, see Grahame R. Dowling and Mark Uncles, "Do Customer Loyalty Programs Really Work?" *Sloan Management Review* 38 (Summer 1997), pp. 71–82.
87. Thomas Lee, "Retailers Look for a Hook," *St. Louis Post-Dispatch*, December 4, 2004.
88. Joseph C. Nunes and Xavier Drèze, "Feeling Superior: The Impact of Loyalty Program Structure on Consumers' Perception of Status," *Journal of Consumer Research* 35 (April 2009), pp. 890–905; Joseph C. Nunes and Xavier Drèze, "Your Loyalty Program Is Betraying You," *Harvard Business Review*, April 2006, pp. 124–31.
89. Adam Lashinsky, "The Decade of Steve Jobs," *Fortune*, November 23, 2009, pp. 93–100; *Apple*, www.apple.com, January 16, 2010; Peter Burrows, "Apple vs. Google," *BusinessWeek*, January 25, 2010, pp. 28–34.
90. Jacquelyn S. Thomas, Robert C. Blattberg, and Edward J. Fox, "Recapturing Lost Customers," *Journal of Marketing Research* 61 (February 2004), pp. 31–45.
91. Werner Reinartz and V. Kumar, "The Impact of Customer Relationship Characteristics on Profitable Lifetime Duration," *Journal of Marketing* 67 (January 2003), pp. 77–99; Werner Reinartz and V. Kumar, "The Mismanagement of Customer Loyalty," *Harvard Business Review*, July 2002, pp. 86–97.
92. V. Kumar, Rajkumar Venkatesan, and Werner Reinartz, "Knowing What to Sell, When, and to Whom," *Harvard Business Review*, March 2006, pp. 131–37.
93. Jeff Zabin, "The Importance of Being Analytical," *Brandweek*, July 24, 2006, p. 21. Stephen Baker, "Math Will Rock Your World," *BusinessWeek*, January 23, 2006, pp. 54–62. Michelle Kessler and Byron Acohido, "Data Miners Dig a Little Deeper," *USA Today*, July 11, 2006.
94. Burt Heim, "Getting Inside the Customer's Mind," *BusinessWeek*, September 22, 2008, p. 88; Mike Duff, "Dunnhumby Complicates Outlook for Tesco, Kroger, Wal-Mart," *bnet.com*, January 13, 2009; Sarah Mahoney, "Macy's Readies New Marketing Strategy, Hires Dunnhumby," *Marketing Daily*, August 14, 2008.
95. Christopher R. Stephens and R. Sukumar, "An Introduction to Data Mining," Rajiv Grover and Marco Vriens, eds., *Handbook of Marketing Research* (Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage Publications, 2006), pp. 455–86; Pang-Ning Tan, Michael Steinbach, and Vipin Kumar, *Introduction to Data Mining* (Upper Saddle River, NJ: Addison Wesley, 2005); Michael J. A. Berry and Gordon S. Linoff, *Data Mining Techniques: For Marketing, Sales, and Customer Relationship Management*, 2nd ed. (Hoboken, NJ: Wiley Computer, 2004); James Lattin, Doug Carroll, and Paul Green, *Analyzing Multivariate Data* (Florence, KY: Thomson Brooks/Cole, 2003).
96. George S. Day, "Creating a Superior Customer-Relating Capability," *Sloan Management Review* 44 (Spring 2003), pp. 77–82.
97. Ibid; George S. Day, "Creating a Superior Customer-Relating Capability," *MSI Report No. 03–101* (Cambridge, MA: Marketing Science Institute, 2003); "Why Some Companies Succeed at CRM (and Many Fail)," *Knowledge at Wharton*, <http://knowledge.wharton.upenn.edu>, January 15, 2003.
98. Werner Reinartz and V. Kumar, "The Mismanagement of Customer Loyalty," *Harvard Business Review*, July 2002, pp. 86–94; Susan M. Fournier, Susan Dobscha, and David Glen Mick, "Preventing the Premature Death of Relationship Marketing," *Harvard Business Review*, January–February 1998, pp. 42–51.
99. Jon Swartz, "Ebay Faithful Expect Loyalty in Return," *USA Today*, July 1, 2002.

Chapter 6

1. “Lego’s Turnaround: Picking Up the Pieces,” *The Economist*, October 28, 2006, p. 76; Paul Grimaldi, “Consumers Design Products Their Way,” *Knight Ridder Tribune Business News*, November 25, 2006; Michael A. Prospero, *Fast Company*, September 2005, p. 35; David Robertson and Per Hjuler, “Innovating a Turnaround at LEGO,” *Harvard Business Review*, September 2009, pp. 20–21; Kim Hjelmgaard, “Lego, Refocusing on Bricks, Builds on Image,” *Wall Street Journal*, December 24, 2009.
2. Michael R. Solomon, *Consumer Behavior: Buying, Having, and Being*, 9th ed. (Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2011).
3. Leon G. Schiffman and Leslie Lazar Kanuk, *Consumer Behavior*, 10th ed. (Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2010).
4. For some classic perspectives, see Richard P. Coleman, “The Continuing Significance of Social Class to Marketing,” *Journal of Consumer Research* 10 (December 1983), pp. 265–80; Richard P. Coleman and Lee P. Rainwater, *Social Standing in America: New Dimension of Class* (New York: Basic Books, 1978).
5. Leon G. Schiffman and Leslie Lazar Kanuk, *Consumer Behavior*, 10th ed. (Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2010).
6. Kimberly L. Allers, “Retail’s Rebel Yell,” *Fortune*, November 10, 2003, p. 137; Kate Rockwood, “Rock Solid,” *Fast Company*, September 2009, pp. 44–48.
7. Elizabeth S. Moore, William L. Wilkie, and Richard J. Lutz, “Passing the Torch: Intergenerational Influences as a Source of Brand Equity,” *Journal of Marketing* 66 (April 2002), pp. 17–37; Robert Boutilier, “Pulling the Family’s Strings,” *American Demographics*, August 1993, pp. 44–48; David J. Burns, “Husband-Wife Innovative Consumer Decision Making: Exploring the Effect of Family Power,” *Psychology & Marketing* (May–June 1992), pp. 175–89; Rosann L. Spiro, “Persuasion in Family Decision Making,” *Journal of Consumer Research* 9 (March 1983), pp. 393–402. For cross-cultural comparisons of husband–wife buying roles, see John B. Ford, Michael S. LaTour, and Tony L. Henthorne, “Perception of Marital Roles in Purchase-Decision Processes: A Cross-Cultural Study,” *Journal of the Academy of Marketing Science* 23 (Spring 1995), pp. 120–31.
8. Kay M. Palan and Robert E. Wilkes, “Adolescent-Parent Interaction in Family Decision Making,” *Journal of Consumer Research* 24 (March 1997), pp. 159–69; Sharon E. Beatty and Salil Talpade, “Adolescent Influence in Family Decision Making: A Replication with Extension,” *Journal of Consumer Research* 21 (September 1994), pp. 332–41.
9. Chenting Su, Edward F. Fern, and Keying Ye, “A Temporal Dynamic Model of Spousal Family Purchase-Decision Behavior,” *Journal of Marketing Research* 40 (August 2003), pp. 268–81.
10. Hillary Chura, “Failing to Connect: Marketing Messages for Women Fall Short,” *Advertising Age*, September 23, 2002, pp. 13–14.
11. Valentyna Melnyk, Stijn M. J. van Osselaer, and Tammo H. A. Bijmolt, “Are Women More Loyal Customers Than Men? Gender Differences in Loyalty to Firms and Individual Service Providers,” *Journal of Marketing* 73 (July 2009), pp. 82–96.
12. Michele Miller, *The Soccer Mom Myth* (Austin, TX: Wizard Academy Press, 2008).
13. “YouthPulse: The Definitive Study of Today’s Youth Generation,” *Harris Interactive*, www.harrisinteractive.com, January 29, 2010.
14. Dana Markow, “Today’s Youth: Understanding Their Importance and Influence,” *Trends & Tudes* 7, no. 1, www.harrisinteractive.com, February 2008.
15. Deborah Roedder John, “Consumer Socialization of Children: A Retrospective Look at Twenty-Five Years of Research,” *Journal of Consumer Research* 26 (December 1999), pp. 183–213; Lan Nguyen Chaplin and Deborah Roedder John, “The Development of Self-Brand Connections in Children and Adolescents,” *Journal of Consumer Research* 32 (June 2005), pp. 119–29; Lan Nguyen Chaplin and Deborah Roedder John, “Growing Up in a Material World: Age Differences in Materialism in Children and Adolescents,” *Journal of Consumer Research* 34 (December 2007), pp. 480–93.
16. “Families and Living Arrangements,” *U.S. Census Bureau*, www.census.gov/population/www/socdemo/hh-fam.html, January 29, 2010.
17. Rex Y. Du and Wagner A. Kamakura, “Household Life Cycles and Lifestyles in the United States,” *Journal of Marketing Research* 48 (February 2006), pp. 121–32; Lawrence Lepisto, “A Life Span Perspective of Consumer Behavior,” Elizabeth Hirshman and Morris Holbrook, eds., *Advances in Consumer Research*, vol. 12 (Provo, UT: Association for Consumer Research, 1985), p. 47; Also see Gail Sheehy, *New Passages: Mapping Your Life across Time* (New York: Random House, 1995).
18. Brooks Barnes and Monica M. Clark, “Tapping into the Wedding Industry to Sell Broadway Seats,” *Wall Street Journal*, July 3, 2006; “Columbus, Ga.–Based Bank Targets Newlyweds for Online Banking,” *Knight Ridder/Tribune Business News*, March 2, 2000.
19. Nicole Perloth, “Survival of the Fittest,” *Forbes*, January 12, 2009, pp. 54–55; “Snap Fitness Opens 1000th Club,” *Club Solutions*, December 17, 2009; Becky Ebenkamp, “Snap Fitness Offers Leaner Gym Experience,” *Brandweek*, January 24, 2009; Aim Jefferson, “A Snap of a Grand Opening: Snap Fitness, West Milford,” *NorthJersey.com*, www.northjersey.com, January 8, 2010.
20. Harold H. Kassarian and Mary Jane Sheffet, “Personality and Consumer Behavior: An Update,” Harold H. Kassarian and Thomas S. Robertson, eds.,

- Perspectives in Consumer Behavior* (Glenview, IL: Scott Foresman, 1981), pp. 160–80.
21. Jennifer Aaker, “Dimensions of Measuring Brand Personality,” *Journal of Marketing Research* 34 (August 1997), pp. 347–56.
 22. Jennifer L. Aaker, Veronica Benet-Martinez, and Jordi Garolera, “Consumption Symbols as Carriers of Culture: A Study of Japanese and Spanish Brand Personality Constructs,” *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology* 81 (March 2001), pp. 492–508.
 23. Yongjun Sung and Spencer F. Tinkham, “Brand Personality Structures in the United States and Korea: Common and Culture-Specific Factors,” *Journal of Consumer Psychology* 15 (December 2005), pp. 334–50.
 24. M. Joseph Sirgy, “Self Concept in Consumer Behavior: A Critical Review,” *Journal of Consumer Research* 9 (December 1982), pp. 287–300.
 25. Timothy R. Graeff, “Consumption Situations and the Effects of Brand Image on Consumers’ Brand Evaluations,” *Psychology & Marketing* 14 (January 1997), pp. 49–70; Timothy R. Graeff, “Image Congruence Effects on Product Evaluations: The Role of Self-Monitoring and Public/Private Consumption,” *Psychology & Marketing* 13 (August 1996), pp. 481–99.
 26. Jennifer L. Aaker, “The Malleable Self: The Role of Self-Expression in Persuasion,” *Journal of Marketing Research* 36 (February 1999), pp. 45–57.
 27. Neal Templin, “Boutique-Hotel Group Thrives on Quirks,” *Wall Street Journal*, March 18, 1999; Chip Conley, *The Rebel Rules* (New York: Fireside, 2001); Tom Osborne, “What Is Your Band Personality,” *Viget Inspire*, www.viget.com, February 2, 2009; Alice Z. Cuneo, “Magazines as Muses: Hotelier Finds Inspiration in Titles such as *Wired*,” *Advertising Age*, November 6, 2006, p. 10.
 28. “LOHAS Forum Attracts Fortune 500 Companies,” *Environmental Leader*, June 22, 2009.
 29. Toby Weber, “All Three? Gee,” *Wireless Review*, May 2003, pp. 12–14.
 30. Noel C. Paul, “Meal Kits in Home,” *Christian Science Monitor*, June 9, 2003, p. 13; Anne D’Innocenzio, “Frugal Times: Hamburger Helper, Kool-Aid in Advertising Limelight,” *Associated Press, Seattle Times*, April 29, 2009.
 31. For a review of academic research on consumer behavior, see Barbara Loken, “Consumer Psychology: Categorization, Inferences, Affect, and Persuasion,” *Annual Review of Psychology* 57 (2006), pp. 453–95. To learn more about how consumer behavior theory can be applied to policy decisions, see “Special Issue on Helping Consumers Help Themselves: Improving the Quality of Judgments and Choices,” *Journal of Public Policy & Marketing* 25 (Spring 2006).
 32. Thomas J. Reynolds and Jonathan Gutman, “Laddering Theory, Method, Analysis, and Interpretation,” *Journal of Advertising Research* (February–March 1988), pp. 11–34; Thomas J. Reynolds and Jerry C. Olson, *Understanding Consumer Decision-Making: The Means-Ends Approach to Marketing and Advertising* (Mahwah, NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum, 2001); Brian Wansink, “Using Laddering to Understand and Leverage a Brand’s Equity,” *Qualitative Market Research* 6 (2003).
 33. Ernest Dichter, *Handbook of Consumer Motivations* (New York: McGraw-Hill, 1964).
 34. Jan Callebaut et al., *The Naked Consumer: The Secret of Motivational Research in Global Marketing* (Antwerp, Belgium: Censydiam Institute, 1994).
 35. Melanie Wells, “Mind Games,” *Forbes*, September 1, 2003, p. 70.
 36. Clotaire Rapaille, “Marketing to the Reptilian Brain,” *Forbes*, July 3, 2006; Clotaire Rapaille, *The Culture Code* (New York: Broadway Books, 2007).
 37. Abraham Maslow, *Motivation and Personality* (New York: Harper & Row, 1954), pp. 80–106. For an interesting business application, see Chip Conley, *Peak: How Great Companies Get Their Mojo from Maslow* (San Francisco: Jossey Bass 2007).
 38. See Frederick Herzberg, *Work and the Nature of Man* (Cleveland: William Collins, 1966); Thierry and Koopman-Iwema, “Motivation and Satisfaction,” P. J. D. Drenth, H. Thierry, P. J. Willems, and C. J. de Wolff, eds., *A Handbook of Work and Organizational Psychology* (East Sussex, UK: Psychology Press, 1984), pp. 141–42.
 39. Bernard Berelson and Gary A. Steiner, *Human Behavior: An Inventory of Scientific Findings* (New York: Harcourt Brace Jovanovich, 1964), p. 88.
 40. J. Edward Russo, Margaret G. Meloy, and Victoria Husted Medvec, “The Distortion of Product Information during Brand Choice,” *Journal of Marketing Research* 35 (November 1998), pp. 438–52.
 41. Leslie de Chernatony and Simon Knox, “How an Appreciation of Consumer Behavior Can Help in Product Testing,” *Journal of Market Research Society* (July 1990), p. 333. See also, Chris Janiszewski and Stiju M. J. Osselar, “A Connectionist Model of Brand–Quality Association,” *Journal of Marketing Research* 37 (August 2000), pp. 331–51.
 42. Florida’s Chris Janiszewski has conducted fascinating research looking at preconscious processing effects. See Chris Janiszewski, “Preattentive Mere Exposure Effects,” *Journal of Consumer Research* 20 (December 1993), pp. 376–92, as well as some of his earlier and subsequent research. For more perspectives, see also John A. Bargh and Tanya L. Chartrand, “The Unbearable Automaticity of Being,” *American Psychologist* 54 (1999), pp. 462–79 and the research programs of both authors. For lively academic debate, see the “Research Dialogue” section of the July 2005 issue of the *Journal of Consumer Psychology*.
 43. See Timothy E. Moore, “Subliminal Advertising: What You See Is What You Get,” *Journal of Marketing* 46 (Spring 1982), pp. 38–47 for an early classic

- discussion; and Andrew B. Aylesworth, Ronald C. Goodstein, and Ajay Kalra, "Effect of Archetypal Embeds on Feelings: An Indirect Route to Affecting Attitudes?" *Journal of Advertising* 28 (Fall 1999), pp. 73–81 for additional discussion.
44. Patricia Winters Lauro, "An Emotional Connection between Sleeper and Mattress," *New York Times*, July 5, 2007.
 45. Ellen Byron, "Tide, Woolite Tout Their Fashion Sense," *Wall Street Journal*, March 11, 2009.
 46. Robert S. Wyer Jr. and Thomas K. Srull, "Person Memory and Judgment," *Psychological Review* 96 (January 1989), pp. 58–83; John R. Anderson, *The Architecture of Cognition* (Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1983).
 47. For additional discussion, see John G. Lynch Jr. and Thomas K. Srull, "Memory and Attentional Factors in Consumer Choice: Concepts and Research Methods," *Journal of Consumer Research* 9 (June 1982), pp. 18–36; and Joseph W. Alba, J. Wesley Hutchinson, and John G. Lynch Jr., "Memory and Decision Making," Harold H. Kassarjian and Thomas S. Robertson, eds., *Handbook of Consumer Theory and Research* (Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice Hall, 1992), pp. 1–49.
 48. Robert S. Lockhart, Fergus I. M. Craik, and Larry Jacoby, "Depth of Processing, Recognition, and Recall," John Brown, ed., *Recall and Recognition* (New York: John Wiley & Sons, 1976); Fergus I. M. Craik and Endel Tulving, "Depth of Processing and the Retention of Words in Episodic Memory," *Journal of Experimental Psychology* 104 (September 1975), pp. 268–94; Fergus I. M. Craik and Robert S. Lockhart, "Levels of Processing: A Framework for Memory Research," *Journal of Verbal Learning and Verbal Behavior* 11 (1972), pp. 671–84.
 49. Leonard M. Lodish, Magid Abraham, Stuart Kalmenson, Jeanne Livelsberger, Beth Lubetkin, Bruce Richardson, and Mary Ellen Stevens, "How T.V. Advertising Works: A Meta-Analysis of 389 Real World Split Cable T.V. Advertising Experiments," *Journal of Marketing Research* 32 (May 1995), pp. 125–39.
 50. Elizabeth F. Loftus and Gregory R. Loftus, "On the Permanence of Stored Information in the Human Brain," *American Psychologist* 35 (May 1980), pp. 409–20.
 51. For a comprehensive review of the academic literature on decision making, see J. Edward Russo and Kurt A. Carlson, "Individual Decision Making," Bart Weitz and Robin Wensley, eds., *Handbook of Marketing* (London: Sage Publications, 2002), pp. 372–408.
 52. Benson Shapiro, V. Kasturi Rangan, and John Sviokla, "Staple Yourself to an Order," *Harvard Business Review*, July–August 1992, pp. 113–22. See also, Carrie M. Heilman, Douglas Bowman, and Gordon P. Wright, "The Evolution of Brand Preferences and Choice Behaviors of Consumers New to a Market," *Journal of Marketing Research* 37 (May 2000), pp. 139–55.
 53. Marketing scholars have developed several models of the consumer buying process through the years. See Mary Frances Luce, James R. Bettman, and John W. Payne, *Emotional Decisions: Tradeoff Difficulty and Coping in Consumer Choice* (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2001); James F. Engel, Roger D. Blackwell, and Paul W. Miniard, *Consumer Behavior*, 8th ed. (Fort Worth, TX: Dryden, 1994); John A. Howard and Jagdish N. Sheth, *The Theory of Buyer Behavior* (New York: John Wiley & Sons, 1969).
 54. William P. Putsis Jr. and Narasimhan Srinivasan, "Buying or Just Browsing? The Duration of Purchase Deliberation," *Journal of Marketing Research* 31 (August 1994), pp. 393–402.
 55. Chem L. Narayana and Rom J. Markin, "Consumer Behavior and Product Performance: An Alternative Conceptualization," *Journal of Marketing* 39 (October 1975), pp. 1–6. See also, Lee G. Cooper and Akihiro Inoue, "Building Market Structures from Consumer Preferences," *Journal of Marketing Research* 33 (August 1996), pp. 293–306; Wayne S. DeSarbo and Kamel Jedidi, "The Spatial Representation of Heterogeneous Consideration Sets," *Marketing Science* 14 (Summer 1995), pp. 326–42.
 56. For a market-structure study of the hierarchy of attributes in the coffee market, see Dipak Jain, Frank M. Bass, and Yu-Min Chen, "Estimation of Latent Class Models with Heterogeneous Choice Probabilities: An Application to Market Structuring," *Journal of Marketing Research* 27 (February 1990), pp. 94–101. For an application of means-end chain analysis to global markets, see Frenkel Ter Hofstede, Jan-Benedict E. M. Steenkamp, and Michel Wedel, "International Market Segmentation Based on Consumer–Product Relations," *Journal of Marketing Research* 36 (February 1999), pp. 1–17.
 57. Virginia Postrel, "The Lessons of the Grocery Shelf Also Have Something to Say about Affirmative Action," *New York Times*, January 30, 2003.
 58. David Krech, Richard S. Crutchfield, and Egerton L. Ballachey, *Individual in Society* (New York: McGraw-Hill, 1962), chapter 2.
 59. Seth Stevenson, "Like Cardboard," *Slate*, January 11, 2010; Ashley M. Heher, "Domino's Comes Clean with New Pizza Ads," *Associated Press*, January 11, 2010; Bob Garfield, "Domino's Does Itself a Disservice by Coming Clean about Its Pizza," *Advertising Age*, January 11, 2010; *Domino's Pizza*, www.pizzaturnaround.com.
 60. See Leigh McAlister, "Choosing Multiple Items from a Product Class," *Journal of Consumer Research* 6 (December 1979), pp. 213–24; Paul E. Green and Yoram Wind, *Multiattribute Decisions in Marketing: A Measurement Approach* (Hinsdale, IL: Dryden, 1973), chapter 2; Richard J. Lutz, "The Role of Attitude Theory in Marketing," H. Kassarjian and T. Robertson, eds., *Perspectives in Consumer Behavior* (Lebanon, IN: Scott Foresman, 1981), pp. 317–39.
 61. This expectancy-value model was originally developed by Martin Fishbein, "Attitudes and Prediction of Behavior," Martin Fishbein, ed., *Readings in Attitude*

- Theory and Measurement* (New York: John Wiley & Sons, 1967), pp. 477–92; For a critical review, see Paul W. Miniard and Joel B. Cohen, “An Examination of the Fishbein-Ajzen Behavioral-Intentions Model’s Concepts and Measures,” *Journal of Experimental Social Psychology* (May 1981), pp. 309–39.
62. Michael R. Solomon, *Consumer Behavior: Buying, Having, and Being*, 9th ed. (Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2011).
 63. James R. Bettman, Eric J. Johnson, and John W. Payne, “Consumer Decision Making,” Kassarian and Robertson, eds., *Handbook of Consumer Theory and Research* (Upper Saddle River, NJ: Pearson Prentice Hall, 1991), pp. 50–84.
 64. Jagdish N. Sheth, “An Investigation of Relationships among Evaluative Beliefs, Affect, Behavioral Intention, and Behavior,” John U. Farley, John A. Howard, and L. Winston Ring, eds., *Consumer Behavior: Theory and Application* (Boston: Allyn & Bacon, 1974), pp. 89–114.
 65. Martin Fishbein, “Attitudes and Prediction of Behavior,” M. Fishbein, ed., *Readings in Attitude Theory and Measurement* (New York: John Wiley & Sons, 1967), pp. 477–492.
 66. Andrew Hampp, “How ‘Paranormal Activity,’ Hit It Big,” *Advertising Age*, October 12, 2009.
 67. Margaret C. Campbell and Ronald C. Goodstein, “The Moderating Effect of Perceived Risk on Consumers’ Evaluations of Product Incongruity: Preference for the Norm,” *Journal of Consumer Research* 28 (December 2001), pp. 439–49; Grahame R. Dowling, “Perceived Risk,” Peter E. Earl and Simon Kemp, eds., *The Elgar Companion to Consumer Research and Economic Psychology* (Cheltenham, UK: Edward Elgar, 1999), pp. 419–24; Grahame R. Dowling, “Perceived Risk: The Concept and Its Measurement,” *Psychology and Marketing* 3 (Fall 1986), pp. 193–210; James R. Bettman, “Perceived Risk and Its Components: A Model and Empirical Test,” *Journal of Marketing Research* 10 (May 1973), pp. 184–90; Raymond A. Bauer, “Consumer Behavior as Risk Taking,” Donald F. Cox, ed., *Risk Taking and Information Handling in Consumer Behavior* (Boston: Division of Research, Harvard Business School, 1967).
 68. Richard L. Oliver, “Customer Satisfaction Research,” Rajiv Grover and Marco Vriens, eds., *Handbook of Marketing Research* (Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage Publications, 2006), pp. 569–87.
 69. Ralph L. Day, “Modeling Choices among Alternative Responses to Dissatisfaction,” *Advances in Consumer Research* 11 (1984), pp. 496–99. Also see Philip Kotler and Murali K. Mantrala, “Flawed Products: Consumer Responses and Marketer Strategies,” *Journal of Consumer Marketing* (Summer 1985), pp. 27–36.
 70. Albert O. Hirschman, *Exit, Voice, and Loyalty* (Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1970).
 71. John D. Cripps, “Heuristics and Biases in Timing the Replacement of Durable Products,” *Journal of Consumer Research* 21 (September 1994), pp. 304–18.
 72. Ben Paytner, “From Trash to Cash,” *Fast Company*, February 2009, p. 44.
 73. Richard E. Petty, *Communication and Persuasion: Central and Peripheral Routes to Attitude Change* (New York: Springer-Verlag, 1986); Richard E. Petty and John T. Cacioppo, *Attitudes and Persuasion: Classic and Contemporary Approaches* (New York: McGraw-Hill, 1981).
 74. For an overview of some issues involved, see James R. Bettman, Mary Frances Luce, and John W. Payne, “Constructive Consumer Choice Processes,” *Journal of Consumer Research* 25 (December 1998), pp. 187–217; and Itamar Simonson, “Getting Closer to Your Customers by Understanding How They Make Choices,” *California Management Review* 35 (Summer 1993), pp. 68–84. For examples of classic studies in this area, see some of the following: Dan Ariely and Ziv Carmon, “Gestalt Characteristics of Experiences: The Defining Features of Summarized Events,” *Journal of Behavioral Decision Making* 13 (April 2000), pp. 191–201; Ravi Dhar and Klaus Werthenbroch, “Consumer Choice between Hedonic and Utilitarian Goods,” *Journal of Marketing Research* 37 (February 2000), pp. 60–71; Itamar Simonson and Amos Tversky, “Choice in Context: Tradeoff Contrast and Extremeness Aversion,” *Journal of Marketing Research* 29 (August 1992), pp. 281–95; Itamar Simonson, “The Effects of Purchase Quantity and Timing on Variety-Seeking Behavior,” *Journal of Marketing Research* 27 (May 1990), pp. 150–62.
 75. Leon Schiffman and Leslie Kanuk, *Consumer Behavior*, 10th ed. (Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2010); Wayne D. Hoyer and Deborah J. MacInnis, *Consumer Behavior*, 5th ed. (Cincinnati, OH: South-Western College Publishing, 2009).
 76. For a detailed review of the practical significance of consumer decision making, see Itamar Simonson, “Get Close to Your Customers by Understanding How They Make Their Choices,” *California Management Review* 35 (Summer 1993), pp. 78–79.
 77. Richard H. Thaler and Cass R. Sunstein, *Nudge: Improving Decisions about Health, Wealth, and Happiness* (New York: Penguin, 2009); Michael Krauss, “A Nudge in the Right Direction,” *Marketing News*, March 30, 2009, p. 20.
 78. See Richard H. Thaler, “Mental Accounting and Consumer Choice,” *Marketing Science* 4 (Summer 1985), pp. 199–214 for a seminal piece; and Richard Thaler, “Mental Accounting Matters,” *Journal of Behavioral Decision Making* 12 (September 1999), pp. 183–206 for additional perspectives.
 79. Gary L. Gastineau and Mark P. Kritzman, *Dictionary of Financial Risk Management*, 3rd ed. (New York: John Wiley & Sons, 1999).
 80. Example adapted from Daniel Kahneman and Amos Tversky, “Prospect Theory: An Analysis of Decision under Risk,” *Econometrica* 47 (March 1979), pp. 263–91.

Chapter 7

1. Adam Lashinsky, "The Enforcer," *Fortune*, September 28, 2009, pp. 117–24; Steve Hamm, "Oracle Faces Its Toughest Deal Yet," *BusinessWeek*, May 4, 2009, p. 24; Steve Hamm and Aaron Ricadela, "Oracle Has Customers Over a Barrel," *BusinessWeek*, September 21, 2009, pp. 52–55.
2. For a comprehensive review of the topic, see James C. Anderson and James A. Narus, *Business Market Management: Understanding, Creating, and Delivering Value*, 3rd ed. (Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2009).
3. Frederick E. Webster Jr. and Yoram Wind, *Organizational Buying Behavior* (Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 1972), p. 2; For a review of some academic literature on the topic, see Håkan Håkansson and Ivan Snehota, "Marketing in Business Markets," Bart Weitz and Robin Wensley, eds., *Handbook of Marketing* (London: Sage Publications, 2002), pp. 513–26; Mark Glynn and Arch Woodside, eds., *Business-to-Business Brand Management: Theory, Research, and Executive Case Study Exercises in Advances in Business Marketing & Purchasing* series, Volume 15 (Bingley, UK: Emerald Group Publishing, 2009).
4. John Low and Keith Blois, "The Evolution of Generic Brands in Industrial Markets: The Challenges to Owners of Brand Equity," *Industrial Marketing Management* 31 (2002), pp. 385–92; Philip Kotler and Waldemar Pfoertsch, *B2B Brand Management* (Berlin, Germany: Springer, 2006).
5. Stuart Elliott, "A Film on the Trucking Life Also Promotes a Big Rig," *New York Times*, August 13, 2008; Nikki Hopewell, "Be Brave B-to-B Marketers," *Marketing News*, November 15, 2008, pp. 18–21.
6. "B-to-B Marketing Trends 2010," *Institute for the Study of Business Markets*, <http://isbm.smeal.psu.edu>.
7. Susan Avery, *Purchasing* 135 (November 2, 2006), p. 36; "PPG Honors Six Excellent Suppliers," www.ppg.com, June 16, 2009.
8. Michael Collins, "Breaking into the Big Leagues," *American Demographics*, January 1996, p. 24.
9. Patrick J. Robinson, Charles W. Faris, and Yoram Wind, *Industrial Buying and Creative Marketing* (Boston: Allyn & Bacon, 1967).
10. Michele D. Bunn, "Taxonomy of Buying Decision Approaches," *Journal of Marketing* 57 (January 1993), pp. 38–56; Daniel H. McQuiston, "Novelty, Complexity, and Importance as Causal Determinants of Industrial Buyer Behavior," *Journal of Marketing* 53 (April 1989), pp. 66–79; Peter Doyle, Arch G. Woodside, and Paul Mitchell, "Organizational Buying in New Task and Rebuy Situations," *Industrial Marketing Management* (February 1979), pp. 7–11.
11. Urban B. Ozanne and Gilbert A. Churchill Jr., "Five Dimensions of the Industrial Adoption Process," *Journal of Marketing Research* 8 (August 1971), pp. 322–28.
12. To learn more about how business-to-business firms can improve their branding, see Philip Kotler and Waldemar Pfoertsch, *B2B Brand Management* (Berlin, Germany: Springer, 2006).
13. Steve Hamm, "The Fine Art of Tech Mergers," *BusinessWeek*, July 10, 2006, pp. 70–71.
14. Elisabeth Sullivan, "Building a Better Brand," *Marketing News*, September 15, 2009, pp. 14–17.
15. Britt Dionne, "Behind the Scenes with NetApp," *The Hub*, July/August 2009; "Close-up with Jay Kidd, CMO, NetApp," *BtoB Magazine*, January 20, 2010; Piet Levy, "It's Alive! Alive!" *Marketing News*, April 30, 2009, p. 8.
16. Jeffrey E. Lewin and Naveen Donthu, "The Influence of Purchase Situation on Buying Center Structure and Involvement: A Select Meta-Analysis of Organizational Buying Behavior Research," *Journal of Business Research* 58 (October 2005), pp. 1381–90; R. Venkatesh and Ajay K. Kohli, "Influence Strategies in Buying Centers," *Journal of Marketing* 59 (October 1995), pp. 71–82; Donald W. Jackson Jr., Janet E. Keith, and Richard K. Burdick, "Purchasing Agents' Perceptions of Industrial Buying Center Influence: A Situational Approach," *Journal of Marketing* 48 (Fall 1984), pp. 75–83.
17. Frederic E. Webster and Yoram Wind, *Organizational Buying Behavior* (Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 1972), p. 6.
18. James C. Anderson and James A. Narus, *Business Market Management: Understanding, Creating, and Delivering Value*, 3rd ed. (Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2009); Frederick E. Webster Jr. and Yoram Wind, "A General Model for Understanding Organizational Buying Behavior," *Journal of Marketing* 36 (April 1972), pp. 12–19; Frederic E. Webster and Yoram Wind, *Organizational Buying Behavior* (Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 1972).
19. Allison Enright, "It Takes a Committee to Buy into B-to-B," *Marketing News*, February 15, 2006, pp. 12–13.
20. Frederick E. Webster Jr. and Kevin Lane Keller, "A Roadmap for Branding in Industrial Markets," *Journal of Brand Management* 11 (May 2004), pp. 388–402.
21. Scott Ward and Frederick E. Webster Jr., "Organizational Buying Behavior," Tom Robertson and Hal Kassarian, eds., *Handbook of Consumer Behavior* (Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 1991), chapter 12, pp. 419–58.
22. Bob Donath, "Emotions Play Key Role in Biz Brand Appeal," *Marketing News*, June 1, 2006, p. 7.
23. Michael Krauss, "Warriors of the Heart," *Marketing News*, February 1, 2006, p. 7; Brian Hindo, "Emerson Electric's Innovation Metrics," *BusinessWeek*, June 5, 2008.
24. Bob Lamons, "Branding, B-to-B Style," *Sales and Marketing Management* 157 (September 2005), pp. 46–50; David A. Kaplan, "No. 1 SAS," in "The 100 Best Companies to Work For," *Fortune*, February 8, 2010, pp. 56–64.

25. Piet Levy, "Reeling in the Hungry Fish," *Marketing News*, May 30, 2009, p. 6; Stephen Baker, Timken Plots a Rust Belt Resurgence," *BusinessWeek*, October 15, 2009; Matt McClellan, "Rolling Along," *Smart Business Akron/Canton*, October 2008.
26. Richard J. Harrington and Anthony K. Tjan, "Transforming Strategy One Customer at a Time," *Harvard Business Review*, March 2008, pp. 62–72; Stanley Reed, "The Rise of a Financial Data Powerhouse," *BusinessWeek*, May 15, 2007; Stanley Reed, "Media Giant or Media Muddle?" *BusinessWeek*, May 1, 2008.
27. Frederic E. Webster and Yoram Wind, *Organizational Buying Behavior* (Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 1972), p. 6.
28. James C. Anderson, James A. Narus, and Wouter van Rossum, "Customer Value Proposition in Business Markets," *Harvard Business Review*, March 2006, pp. 2–10; James C. Anderson, "From Understanding to Managing Customer Value in Business Markets," H. Håkansson, D. Harrison, and A. Waluszewski, eds., *Rethinking Marketing: New Marketing Tools* (London: John Wiley & Sons, 2004), pp. 137–59.
29. Susan Caminiti, "Drivers of the Economy," *Fortune*, April 17, 2006, p. C1; "Pfizer Turns Around Its Diversity & Inclusion Initiatives," *Diversity/Careers in Engineering and Information Technology*, December 2009/January 2010; Barbara Frankel, "Pfizer's Newest CDO Represents Transferable Talent," *Diversity Inc.*, November/December 2009; "From One Small Business to Another: Enhancing Community Through Commerce," *Pfizer*, www.pfizersupplierdiversity.com, February 6, 2010.
30. "Case Studies: Rio Tinto," *Quadrem*, www.quadrem.com, February 6, 2010.
31. "Case Study 2003: Mitsui & Co. Cuts the Cost of Trade Transactions by 50% by Using Trade Card," *Mitsui & Co., LTD.*, www.tradecard.com.
32. "Best Practices of the Best-Run Sales Organizations: Sales Opportunity Blueprinting," *SAP*, http://download.sap.com, February 6, 2010.
33. Patrick J. Robinson, Charles W. Faris, and Yoram Wind, *Industrial Buying and Creative Marketing* (Boston, MA: Allyn & Bacon, 1967).
34. *Institute Of Scrap Recycling Institute*, www.isri.org.
35. Geri Smith, "Hard Times Ease for a Cement King," *BusinessWeek*, November 9, 2009, p. 28.
36. Rajdeep Grewal, James M. Comer, and Raj Mehta, "An Investigation into the Antecedents of Organizational Participation in Business-to-Business Electronic Markets," *Journal of Marketing* 65 (July 2001), pp. 17–33.
37. "Open Sesame? Or Could the Doors Slam Shut for Alibaba.com?" *Knowledge@Wharton*, July 27, 2005; Julia Angwin, "Top Online Chemical Exchange Is Unlikely Success Story," *Wall Street Journal*, January 8, 2004; Olga Kharif, "B2B, Take 2," *BusinessWeek*, November 25, 2003; George S. Day, Adam J. Fein, and Gregg Ruppertsberger, "Shakeouts in Digital Markets: Lessons from B2B Exchanges," *California Management Review* 45 (Winter 2003), pp. 131–51.
38. *Ritchie Bros Auctioneers*, www.rbauktion.com.
39. Brian J. Carroll, *Lead Generation for the Complex Sale* (New York: McGraw-Hill, 2006).
40. "2009–10 B2B Marketing Benchmark Report," *Marketing Sherpa*, www.sherpastore.com, February 6, 2010.
41. Allison Enright, "It Takes a Committee to Buy into B-to-B," *Marketing News*, February 15, 2006, pp. 12–13.
42. Robert Hiebeler, Thomas B. Kelly, and Charles Kettelman, *Best Practices: Building Your Business with Customer-Focused Solutions* (New York: Arthur Andersen/Simon & Schuster, 1998), pp. 122–24.
43. Daniel J. Flint, Robert B. Woodruff, and Sarah Fisher Gardial, "Exploring the Phenomenon of Customers' Desired Value Change in a Business-to-Business Context," *Journal of Marketing* 66 (October 2002), pp. 102–17.
44. Ruth N. Bolton and Matthew B. Myers, "Price-Based Global Market Segmentation for Services," *Journal of Marketing* 67 (July 2003), pp. 108–28.
45. Wolfgang Ulaga and Andreas Eggert, "Value-Based Differentiation in Business Relationships: Gaining and Sustaining Key Supplier Status," *Journal of Marketing* 70 (January 2006), pp. 119–36.
46. Christopher Palmeri, "Serving Two (Station) Masters," *BusinessWeek*, July 24, 2006, p. 46.
47. David Kiley, "Small Print Jobs for Peanuts," *BusinessWeek*, July 17, 2006, p. 58.
48. Nirmalya Kumar, *Marketing as Strategy: Understanding the CEO's Agenda for Driving Growth and Innovation* (Boston: Harvard Business School Press, 2004).
49. *Ibid.*
50. See William Atkinson, "Now That's Value Added," *Purchasing*, December 11, 2003, p. 26; James A. Narus and James C. Anderson, "Turn Your Industrial Distributors into Partners," *Harvard Business Review*, March–April 1986, pp. 66–71; www.lincolnelectric.com/knowledge/custsolutions/gcr.asp.
51. "Case Study: Automotive Vendor Managed Inventory, Plexco (Australia)," www.marciajedd.com.
52. For foundational material, see Lloyd M. Rinehart, James A. Eckert, Robert B. Handfield, Thomas J. Page Jr., and Thomas Atkin, "An Assessment of Buyer–Seller Relationships," *Journal of Business Logistics* 25 (2004), pp. 25–62; F. Robert Dwyer, Paul Schurr, and Sejo Oh, "Developing Buyer–Supplier Relationships," *Journal of Marketing* 51 (April 1987), pp. 11–28; and Barbara Bund Jackson, *Winning & Keeping Industrial Customers: The Dynamics of Customer Relations* (Lexington, MA: D. C. Heath, 1985).
53. Arnt Buvik and George John, "When Does Vertical Coordination Improve Industrial Purchasing Relationships?" *Journal of Marketing* 64 (October 2000), pp. 52–64.
54. Piet Levy, "Ringling Up a New Approach," *Marketing News*, March 15, 2009, p. 8; "The Inspiration Behind Tellabs' 'New Life' Campaign," *Business Marketing Association*, www.bmachicago.org, February 6, 2010;

- Kate Maddox, "Marketers Look to Social Media for Interaction," *BtoB Magazine*, January 15, 2007; Chelsea Ely, "Tellabs Aims to 'Outsmart, Not Outspend Large Competitors,'" *BtoB Magazine*, January 9, 2009.
55. Das Narayandas and V. Kasturi Rangan, "Building and Sustaining Buyer-Seller Relationships in Mature Industrial Markets," *Journal of Marketing* 68 (July 2004), pp. 63-77.
 56. Robert W. Palmatier, Rajiv P. Dant, Dhruv Grewal, and Kenneth R. Evans, "Factors Influencing the Effectiveness of Relationship Marketing: A Meta-Analysis," *Journal of Marketing* 70 (October 2006), pp. 136-53; Jean L. Johnson, Ravipreet S. Sohli, and Rajdeep Grewal, "The Role of Relational Knowledge Stores in Interfirm Partnering," *Journal of Marketing* 68 (July 2004), pp. 21-36; Fred Selnes and James Sallis, "Promoting Relationship Learning," *Journal of Marketing* 67 (July 2003), pp. 80-95; Patricia M. Doney and Joseph P. Cannon, "An Examination of the Nature of Trust in Buyer-Seller Relationships," *Journal of Marketing* 61 (April 1997), pp. 35-51; Shankar Ganesan, "Determinants of Long-Term Orientation in Buyer-Seller Relationships," *Journal of Marketing* 58 (April 1994), pp. 1-19.
 57. William W. Keep, Stanley C. Hollander, and Roger Dickinson, "Forces Impinging on Long-Term Business-to-Business Relationships in the United States: An Historical Perspective," *Journal of Marketing* 62 (April 1998), pp. 31-45.
 58. Joseph P. Cannon and William D. Perreault Jr., "Buyer-Seller Relationships in Business Markets," *Journal of Marketing Research* 36 (November 1999), pp. 439-60.
 59. Jan B. Heide and Kenneth H. Wathne, "Friends, Businesspeople, and Relationship Roles: A Conceptual Framework and Research Agenda," *Journal of Marketing* 70 (July 2006), pp. 90-103.
 60. Joseph P. Cannon and William D. Perreault Jr., "Buyer-Seller Relationships in Business Markets," *Journal of Marketing Research* 36 (November 1999), pp. 439-60.
 61. Thomas G. Noordewier, George John, and John R. Nevin, "Performance Outcomes of Purchasing Arrangements in Industrial Buyer-Vendor Arrangements," *Journal of Marketing* 54 (October 1990), pp. 80-93; Arnt Buvik and George John, "When Does Vertical Coordination Improve Industrial Purchasing Relationships?" *Journal of Marketing* 64 (October 2000), pp. 52-64.
 62. Akesel I. Rokkan, Jan B. Heide, and Kenneth H. Wathne, "Specific Investment in Marketing Relationships: Expropriation and Bonding Effects," *Journal of Marketing Research* 40 (May 2003), pp. 210-24.
 63. Kenneth H. Wathne and Jan B. Heide, "Relationship Governance in a Supply Chain Network," *Journal of Marketing* 68 (January 2004), pp. 73-89; Douglas Bowman and Das Narayandas, "Linking Customer Management Effort to Customer Profitability in Business Markets," *Journal of Marketing Research* 61 (November 2004), pp. 433-47; Mrinal Ghosh and George John, "Governance Value Analysis and Marketing Strategy," *Journal of Marketing* 63 (Special Issue, 1999), pp. 131-45.
 64. Sandy Jap, "Pie Expansion Effects: Collaboration Processes in Buyer-Seller Relationships," *Journal of Marketing Research* 36 (November 1999), pp. 461-75.
 65. Buvik and John, "When Does Vertical Coordination Improve Industrial Purchasing Relationships?" pp. 52-64.
 66. Kenneth H. Wathne and Jan B. Heide, "Opportunism in Interfirm Relationships: Forms, Outcomes, and Solutions," *Journal of Marketing* 64 (October 2000), pp. 36-51.
 67. Mary Walton, "When Your Partner Fails You," *Fortune*, May 26, 1997, pp. 151-54.
 68. Mark B. Houston and Shane A. Johnson, "Buyer-Supplier Contracts versus Joint Ventures: Determinants and Consequences of Transaction Structure," *Journal of Marketing Research* 37 (February 2000), pp. 1-15.
 69. Aksel I. Rokkan, Jan B. Heide, and Kenneth H. Wathne, "Specific Investment in Marketing Relationships: Expropriation and Bonding Effects," *Journal of Marketing Research* 40 (May 2003), pp. 210-24.
 70. Elisabeth Sullivan, "A Worthwhile Investment," *Marketing News*, December 30, 2009, p. 10.
 71. Shar VanBoskirk, "B2B Email Marketing Best Practices: Hewlett Packard," *Forrester*, www.forrester.com, February 21, 2006.
 72. Josh Bernoff, "Why B-to-B Ought to Love Social Media," *Marketing News*, April 15, 2009, p. 20; Elisabeth Sullivan, "A Long Slog," *Marketing News*, February 28, 2009, pp. 15-18.
 73. Elisabeth Sullivan, "One to One," *Marketing News*, May 15, 2009, pp. 10-12.
 74. Elisabeth Sullivan, "Cognos Inc.," *Marketing News*, April 1, 2008, p. 10.
 75. Paul King, "Purchasing: Keener Competition Requires Thinking Outside the Box," *Nation's Restaurant News*, August 18, 2003, p. 87.
 76. Bill Gormley, "The U.S. Government Can Be Your Lifelong Customer," *Washington Business Journal*, January 23, 2009; Chris Warren, "How to Sell to Uncle Sam," *BNET Crash Course*, www.bnet.com, February 6, 2010.
 77. Matthew Swibel and Janet Novack, "The Scariest Customer," *Forbes*, November 10, 2003, pp. 96-97.
 78. Laura M. Litvan, "Selling to Uncle Sam: New, Easier Rules," *Nation's Business* (March 1995), pp. 46-48.
 79. Ellen Messmer, "Feds Do E-Commerce the Hard Way," *Network World*, April 13, 1998, pp. 31-32.
 80. Bill Gormley, "The U.S. Government Can Be Your Lifelong Customer," *Washington Business Journal*, January 23, 2009.

Chapter 8

- Jonathan Schneider, "Club Med—Sex, Sand, and Surf," *Club Med*, www.clubmed.us, January 26, 2010; *Brand Channel*, www.brandchannel.com, July 2, 2001; Christina White, "It's Raining Hard on Club Med," *BusinessWeek*, February 4, 2002; Susan Spano, "Club Med, Swinging into the Future," *Morning Call*, January 15, 2006; Cherrisse Beh, "Club Med Unveils Global Branding Push," *Marketing Interactive.com*, www.marketing-interactive.com, March 31, 2008.
- Dale Buss, "Brands in the 'Hood,'" *Point*, December 2005, pp. 19–24.
- Nanette Byrnes, "What's Beyond for Bed Bath & Beyond?" *BusinessWeek*, January 19, 2004, pp. 45–50; Andrea Lillo, "Bed Bath Sees More Room for Growth," *Home Textiles Today*, July 7, 2003, p. 2.
- By visiting the company's sponsored site, MyBestSegments.com, you can enter in a zip code and discover the top five clusters for that area. Note that another leading supplier of geodemographic data is ClusterPlus (Strategic Mapping).
- Becky Ebenkamp, "Urban America Redefined," *Brandweek*, October 6, 2003, pp. 12–13.
- Mike Freeman, "Clusters of Customers," *San Diego Union-Tribune*, December 19, 2004.
- Michael J. Weiss, "To Be About to Be," *American Demographics*, September 2003, pp. 29–36.
- "YouthPulse: The Definitive Study of Today's Youth Generation," *Harris Interactive*, 2009, www.harrisinteractive.com.
- Gina Chon, "Car Makers Talk 'Bout G-G-Generations," *Wall Street Journal*, May 9, 2006.
- For some practical implications, see Marti Barletta, *Marketing to Women: How to Increase Share of the World's Largest Market*, 2nd ed. (New York: Kaplan Business, 2006); Bridget Brennan, *Why She Buys: The New Strategy for Reaching the World's Most Powerful Consumers* (New York: Crown Business, 2009).
- For more consumer behavior perspectives on gender, see Jane Cunningham and Philippa Roberts, "What Woman Want," *Brand Strategy*, December 2006–January 2007, pp. 40–41; Robert J. Fisher and Laurette Dube, "Gender Differences in Responses to Emotional Advertising: A Social Desirability Perspective," *Journal of Consumer Research* 31 (March 2005), pp. 850–58; Joan Meyers-Levy and Durairaj Maheswaran, "Exploring Males' and Females' Processing Strategies: When and Why Do Differences Occur in Consumers' Processing of Ad Claims," *Journal of Consumer Research* 18 (June 1991), pp. 63–70; Joan Meyers-Levy and Brian Sternthal, "Gender Differences in the Use of Message Cues and Judgments," *Journal of Marketing Research* 28 (February 1991), pp. 84–96.
- Dawn Klingensmith, "Marketing Gurus Try to Read Women's Minds," *Chicago Tribune*, April 19, 2006; Elisabeth Sullivan, "The Mother Lode," *Marketing News*, July 15, 2008, p. 28; Claire Cain Miller, "Advertising Woman to Woman, Online," *New York Times*, August 13, 2008; Eric Newman, "The Mook Industrial Complex," *Brandweek*, January 14, 2008, pp. 21–24.
- Marti Barletta, "Who's Really Buying That Car? Ask Her," *Brandweek*, September 4, 2006, p. 20; Robert Craven, Kiki Maurey, and John Davis, "What Women Really Want," *Critical Eye* 15 (July 2006), pp. 50–53; Michael J. Silverstein and Kate Sayre, "The Female Economy," *Harvard Business Review*, September 2009, pp. 46–53.
- Aixa Pascual, "Lowe's Is Sprucing Up Its House," *BusinessWeek*, June 3, 2002, pp. 56–57; Pamela Sebastian Ridge, "Tool Sellers Tap Their Feminine Side," *Wall Street Journal*, June 16, 2002.
- Michael J. Silverstein and Neil Fiske, *Trading Up: The New American Luxury* (New York: Portfolio, 2003); Dylan Machan, "Sharing Victoria's Secret," *Forbes*, June 5, 1995, p. 132; www.limitedbrands.com.
- Ian Zack, "Out of the Tube," *Forbes*, November 26, 2001, p. 200.
- Gregory L. White and Shirley Leung, "Middle Market Shrinks as Americans Migrate toward the Higher End," *Wall Street Journal*, March 29, 2002.
- Burt Helm, "PNC Lures Gen Y with Its 'Virtual Wallet' Account," *BusinessWeek*, November 26, 2008; *Virtual Wallet by PNC Leading the Way*, www.pncvirtualwallet.com, January 26, 2010.
- Charles D. Schewe and Geoffrey Meredith, "Segmenting Global Markets by Generational Cohort: Determining Motivations by Age," *Journal of Consumer Behavior* 4 (October 2004), pp. 51–63; Geoffrey E. Meredith and Charles D. Schewe, *Managing by Defining Moments: America's 7 Generational Cohorts, Their Workplace Values, and Why Managers Should Care* (New York: Hungry Minds, 2002); Geoffrey E. Meredith, Charles D. Schewe, and Janice Karlovich, *Defining Markets Defining Moments* (New York: Hungry Minds, 2001).
- Piet Levy, "The Quest for Cool," *Marketing News*, February 28, 2009, p. 6; Michelle Conlin, "Youth Quake," *BusinessWeek*, January 21, 2008, pp. 32–36.
- Karen E. Klein, "The ABCs of Selling to Generation X," *BusinessWeek*, April 15, 2004; M. J. Stephey, "Gen-X: the Ignored Generation?" *Time*, April 16, 2008; Tamara Erickson, "Don't Treat Them Like Baby Boomers," *BusinessWeek*, August 25, 2008, p. 64.
- Louise Lee, "Love Those Boomers," *BusinessWeek*, October 24, 2005, p. 94; Bob Moos, "Last of Boomers Turn 40," *Dallas Morning News*, January 1, 2005; Linda Tischler, "Where the Bucks Are," *Fast Company*, March 2004, pp. 71–77; Alycia de Mesa, "Don't Ignore the Boomer Consumer," *brandchannel*, www.brandchannel.com, June 25, 2007; Judann Pollack, "Boomers Don't Want Your Pity, but They Do Demand Your Respect," *Advertising Age*, October 8, 2007, p. 24.
- Mark Dolliver, "Marketing to Today's 65-plus Consumers," *Adweek*, July 27, 2009.

24. Stuart Elliott, "The Older Audience Is Looking Better Than Ever," *New York Times*, April 19, 2009.
25. Marissa Miley, "Don't Bypass African-Americans," *Advertising Age*, February 2, 2009.
26. Elisabeth Sullivan, "Choose Your Words Wisely," *Marketing News*, February 15, 2008, p. 22; Emily Bryson York, "Brands Prepare for a More Diverse 'General Market,'" *Advertising Age*, November 30, 2009, p. 6.
27. Emily Bryson York, "Brands Prepare for a More Diverse 'General Market,'" *Advertising Age*, November 30, 2009, p. 6.
28. Daniel B. Honigman, "10 Minutes with . . . Caralene Robinson," *Marketing News*, February 15, 2008, pp. 24–28; Sonya A. Grier, Anne Brumbaugh, and Corliss G. Thornton, "Crossover Dreams: Consumer Responses to Ethnic-Oriented Products," *Journal of Marketing* 70 (April 2006), pp. 35–51.
29. "Hispanics Will Top All U.S. Minority Groups for Purchasing Power by 2007," *Selig Center of Economic Growth, Terry College of Business, University of Georgia*, www.selig.uga.edu, September 1, 2006; Jeffrey M. Humphreys, "The Multicultural Economy 2008," *Selig Center of Economic Growth, Terry College of Business, University of Georgia*, 2008.
30. Andrew Pierce, "Multiculti Markets Demand Multilayered Markets," *Marketing News*, May 1, 2008, p. 21.
31. Barbara De Lollis, "At Goya, It's All in La Familia," *USA Today*, March 24, 2008, pp. 1B–2B.
32. Ronald Grover, "The Payoff from Targeting Hispanics," *BusinessWeek*, April 20, 2009, p. 76; Della de Lafuente, "The New Weave," *Adweek Media*, March 3, 2008, pp. 26–28.
33. Piet Levy, "La Musica to Their Ears," *Marketing News*, May 15, 2009, pp. 14–16; Ronald Grover, "The Payoff from Targeting Hispanics," *BusinessWeek*, April 20, 2009, p. 76.
34. Elaine Wong, "Why Bounty Is a Hit with U.S. Hispanics," *Brandweek*, August 17, 2009, p. 6.
35. Samar Farah, "Latino Marketing Goes Mainstream," *Boston Globe*, July 9, 2006; Dianne Solis, "Latino Buying Power Still Surging," *Dallas Morning News*, September 1, 2006; Joseph Tarnowski, "Assimilate or Perish," *Progressive Grocer*, February 1, 2006.
36. Kevin Lane Keller, "got milk?: Branding a Commodity," *Best Practice Cases in Branding*, 3rd ed. (Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2008); *got milk?* www.gotmilk.com; Jeff Manning, *got milk?: The book* (Roseville, CA: Prima Lifestyles 1999).
37. Elisabeth A. Sullivan, "Speak Our Language," *Marketing News*, March 15, 2008, pp. 20–22.
38. Rita Chang, "Mobile Marketers Target Receptive Hispanic Audience," *Advertising Age*, January 26, 2009, p. 18.
39. Adele Lassere, "The Marketing Corner: Marketing to African-American Consumers," *Epoch Times*, November 27, 2009.
40. Lisa Sanders, "How to Target Blacks? First You Gotta Spend," *Advertising Age*, July 3, 2006, p. 19; Pepper Miller and Herb Kemp, *What's Black about It? Insights to Increase Your Share of a Changing African-American Market* (Ithaca, NY: Paramount Market Publishing, 2005).
41. Marissa Fabris, "Special Report on Multicultural Marketing: Market Power," *Target Marketing*, www.targetmarketingmag.com, May 2008.
42. Sonya A. Grier and Shiriki K. Kumanyika, "The Context for Choice: Health Implications of Targeted Food and Beverage Marketing to African-Americans," *American Journal of Public Health* 98 (September 2008), pp. 1616–29.
43. "The 'Invisible' Market," *Brandweek*, January 30, 2006.
44. Andrew Pierce, "Multiculti Markets Demand Multilayered Markets," *Marketing News*, May 1, 2008, p. 21.
45. "The 'Invisible' Market," *Brandweek*, January 30, 2006; Bill Imada, "Four Myths about the Asian-American Market," *Advertising Age*, October 31, 2007; "Kraft Targets Asian American Moms," *Brandweek*, September 1, 2005.
46. "Marketing to Asian-Americans," Special Supplement to *Brandweek*, May 26, 2008.
47. Kate Rockwood, "Partnering with Pride," *Fast Company*, November 2009, pp. 21–28.
48. *Prime Access, Inc*, www.primeaccess.net.
49. *Strategic Business Insights*, www.strategicbusinessinsights.com.
50. Andrew Kaplan, "A Fruitful Mix," *Beverage World*, May 2006, pp. 28–36.
51. This classification was adapted from George H. Brown, "Brand Loyalty: Fact or Fiction?" *Advertising Age*, June 1952–January 1953, a series. See also, Peter E. Rossi, Robert E. McCulloch, and Greg M. Allenby, "The Value of Purchase History Data in Target Marketing," *Marketing Science* 15 (Fall 1996), pp. 321–40.
52. James C. Anderson and James A. Narus, "Capturing the Value of Supplementary Services," *Harvard Business Review*, January–February 1995, pp. 75–83.
53. For a review of many of the methodological issues in developing segmentation schemes, see William R. Dillon and Soumen Mukherjee, "A Guide to the Design and Execution of Segmentation Studies," Rajiv Grover and Marco Vriens, eds., *Handbook of Marketing Research* (Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage, 2006); and Michael Wedel and Wagner A. Kamakura, *Market Segmentation: Conceptual and Methodological Foundations* (Boston: Kluwer, 1997).
54. Michael E. Porter, *Competitive Strategy* (New York: Free Press, 1980), pp. 22–23.
55. *Estee Lauder*, www.esteeauder.com.
56. Barry Silverstein, "Hallmark—Calling Card," www.brandchannel.com, June 15, 2009; *Hallmark*, www.hallmark.com; Brad van Auken, "Leveraging the Brand: Hallmark Case Study," www.brandstrategyinsider.com, January 11, 2008.

57. Jerry Harkavy, "Colgate Buying Control of Tom's of Maine for \$100 Million," *Associated Press*, *Boston.com*, March 21, 2006.
58. Robert Blattberg and John Deighton, "Interactive Marketing: Exploiting the Age of Addressability," *Sloan Management Review* 33 (Fall 1991), pp. 5–14.
59. Don Peppers and Martha Rogers, *One-to-One B2B: Customer Development Strategies for the Business-To-Business World* (New York: Doubleday, 2001); Jerry Wind and Arvind Rangaswamy, "Customerization: The Next Revolution in Mass Customization," *Journal of Interactive Marketing* 15 (Winter 2001), pp. 13–32.
60. James C. Anderson and James A. Narus, "Capturing the Value of Supplementary Services," *Harvard Business Review*, January–February 1995, pp. 75–83.
61. Itamar Simonson, "Determinants of Customers' Responses to Customized Offers: Conceptual Framework and Research Propositions," *Journal of Marketing* 69 (January 2005), pp. 32–45.
62. Joann Muller, "Kmart con Salsa: Will It Be Enough?" *BusinessWeek*, September 9, 2002.
63. Bart Macchiette and Roy Abhijit, "Sensitive Groups and Social Issues," *Journal of Consumer Marketing* 11 (Fall 1994), pp. 55–64.
64. Roger O. Crockett, "They're Lining Up for Flicks in the 'Hood,'" *BusinessWeek*, June 8, 1998, pp. 75–76.
65. Caroline E. Mayer, "Nurturing Brand Loyalty: with Preschool Supplies, Firms Woo Future Customers—and Current Parents," *Washington Post*, October 12, 2003.

Chapter 9

1. Alli McConnon, "Lululemon's Next Workout," *BusinessWeek*, June 9, 2008, pp. 43–44; Danielle Sacks, "Lululemon's Cult of Selling," *Fast Company*, March 2009; Bryant Urstadt, "Lust for Lulu," *New York Magazine*, July 26, 2009.
2. For foundational work on branding, see Jean-Noel Kapferer, *The New Strategic Brand Management*, 4th ed. (New York: Kogan Page, 2008); David A. Aaker and Erich Joachimsthaler, *Brand Leadership* (New York: Free Press, 2000); David A. Aaker, *Building Strong Brands* (New York: Free Press, 1996); David A. Aaker, *Managing Brand Equity* (New York: Free Press, 1991).
3. Interbrand Group, *World's Greatest Brands: An International Review* (New York: John Wiley & Sons, 1992). See also Karl Moore and Susan Reid, "The Birth of Brand," *Business History* 50 (2008), pp. 419–32.
4. Rajneesh Suri and Kent B. Monroe, "The Effects of Time Pressure on Consumers' Judgments of Prices and Products," *Journal of Consumer Research* 30 (June 2003), pp. 92–104.
5. Rita Clifton and John Simmons, eds., *The Economist on Branding* (New York: Bloomberg Press, 2004); Rik Riezebos, *Brand Management: A Theoretical and Practical Approach* (Essex, England: Pearson Education, 2003); and Paul Temporal, *Advanced Brand Management: From Vision to Valuation* (Singapore: John Wiley & Sons, 2002).
6. Constance E. Bagley, *Managers and the Legal Environment: Strategies for the 21st Century*, 3rd ed. (Cincinnati, OH: South-Western College/West Publishing, 2005); For a marketing academic point of view of some important legal issues, see Judith Zaichkowsky, *The Psychology behind Trademark Infringement and Counterfeiting* (Mahwah, NJ: LEA Publishing, 2006) and Maureen Morrin and Jacob Jacoby, "Trademark Dilution: Empirical Measures for an Elusive Concept," *Journal of Public Policy & Marketing* 19 (May 2000), pp. 265–76; Maureen Morrin, Jonathan Lee, and Greg M. Allenby, "Determinants of Trademark Dilution," *Journal of Consumer Research* 33 (September 2006), pp. 248–57.
7. Tulin Erdem, "Brand Equity as a Signaling Phenomenon," *Journal of Consumer Psychology* 7 (1998), pp. 131–57; Joffre Swait and Tulin Erdem, "Brand Effects on Choice and Choice Set Formation Under Uncertainty," *Marketing Science* 26 (September–October 2007), pp. 679–97; Tulin Erdem, Joffre Swait, and Ana Valenzuela, "Brands as Signals: A Cross-Country Validation Study," *Journal of Marketing* 70 (January 2006), pp. 34–49.
8. Scott Davis, *Brand Asset Management: Driving Profitable Growth through Your Brands* (San Francisco: Jossey-Bass, 2000); Mary W. Sullivan, "How Brand Names Affect the Demand for Twin Automobiles," *Journal of Marketing Research* 35 (May 1998), pp. 154–65; D. C. Bello and M. B. Holbrook, "Does an Absence of Brand Equity Generalize across Product Classes?" *Journal of Business Research* 34 (October 1996), pp. 125–31; Adrian J. Slywotzky and Benson P. Shapiro, "Leveraging to Beat the Odds: The New Marketing Mindset," *Harvard Business Review*, September–October 1993, pp. 97–107.
9. The power of branding is not without its critics, however, some of whom reject the commercialism associated with branding activities. See Naomi Klein, *No Logo: Taking Aim at the Brand Bullies* (New York: Picador, 2000).
10. "Study: Food in McDonald's Wrapper Tastes Better to Kids," *Associated Press*, August 6, 2007.
11. Natalie Mizik and Robert Jacobson, "Talk about Brand Strategy," *Harvard Business Review*, October 2005, p. 1; Baruch Lev, *Intangibles: Management, Measurement, and Reporting* (Washington, DC: Brookings Institute, 2001).
12. For an academic discussion of how consumers become so strongly attached to people as brands, see Matthew Thomson, "Human Brands: Investigating Antecedents to Consumers' Stronger Attachments to Celebrities," *Journal of Marketing* 70 (July 2006), pp. 104–19; For some practical branding tips from the world of rock and roll, see Roger Blackwell and Tina Stephan, *Brands That Rock* (Hoboken, NJ: John Wiley & Sons, 2004); and from the world of sports, see Irving

- Rein, Philip Kotler, and Ben Shields, *The Elusive Fan: Reinventing Sports in a Crowded Marketplace* (New York: McGraw-Hill, 2006).
13. Mark Borden, "Shaun White Lifts Off," *Fast Company*, February 2009, pp. 56–65; Mike Duff, "Target Cuts Across Fashion with Shaun White," *bnet.com*, February 20, 2009.
 14. Kevin Lane Keller, *Strategic Brand Management*, 3rd ed. (Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2008); David A. Aaker and Erich Joachimsthaler, *Brand Leadership* (New York: Free Press 2000); David A. Aaker, *Building Strong Brands* (New York: Free Press, 1996); David A. Aaker, *Managing Brand Equity* (New York: Free Press, 1991).
 15. Other approaches are based on economic principles of signaling, for example, Tulin Erdem, "Brand Equity as a Signaling Phenomenon," *Journal of Consumer Psychology* 7 (1998), pp. 131–57; or more of a sociological, anthropological, or biological perspective (e.g., Grant McCracken, *Culture and Consumption II: Markets, Meaning, and Brand Management* (Bloomington: Indiana University Press, 2005); Susan Fournier, "Consumers and Their Brands: Developing Relationship Theory in Consumer Research," *Journal of Consumer Research* 24 (September 1998), pp. 343–73; Craig J. Thompson, Aric Rindfleisch, and Zeynep Arsel, "Emotional Branding and the Strategic Value of the Doppelganger Brand Image," *Journal of Marketing* 70 (January 2006), pp. 50–64.
 16. Jennifer L. Aaker, "Dimensions of Brand Personality," *Journal of Marketing Research* 34 (August 1997), pp. 347–56; Jean-Noel Kapferer, *Strategic Brand Management: New Approaches to Creating and Evaluating Brand Equity* (London: Kogan Page, 1992), p. 38; Scott Davis, *Brand Asset Management: Driving Profitable Growth through Your Brands* (San Francisco: Jossey-Bass, 2000). For an overview of academic research on branding, see Kevin Lane Keller, "Branding and Brand Equity," Bart Weitz and Robin Wensley, eds., *Handbook of Marketing* (London: Sage Publications, 2002), pp. 151–78; Kevin Lane Keller and Don Lehmann, "Brands and Branding: Research Findings and Future Priorities," *Marketing Science* 25 (November–December 2006), pp. 740–59.
 17. Kevin Lane Keller, *Strategic Brand Management*, 3rd ed. (Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2008).
 18. Theodore Levitt, "Marketing Success through Differentiation—of Anything," *Harvard Business Review*, January–February 1980, pp. 83–91.
 19. Kusum Ailawadi, Donald R. Lehmann, and Scott Neslin, "Revenue Premium as an Outcome Measure of Brand Equity," *Journal of Marketing* 67 (October 2003), pp. 1–17.
 20. Jon Miller and David Muir, *The Business of Brands* (West Sussex, England: John Wiley & Sons, 2004).
 21. Michael Bush, "Virgin America," *Advertising Age*, November 16, 2009, p. 12.
 22. Kevin Lane Keller, "Building Customer-Based Brand Equity: A Blueprint for Creating Strong Brands," *Marketing Management* 10 (July–August 2001), pp. 15–19.
 23. For some academic insights, see Matthew Thomson, Deborah J. MacInnis, and C. W. Park, "The Ties That Bind: Measuring the Strength of Consumers' Emotional Attachments to Brands," *Journal of Consumer Psychology* 15 (2005), pp. 77–91; Alexander Fedorikhin, C. Whan Park, and Matthew Thomson, "Beyond Fit and Attitude: The Effect of Emotional Attachment on Consumer Responses to Brand Extensions," *Journal of Consumer Psychology* 18 (2008), pp. 281–91; Jennifer Edson Escalas, "Narrative Processing: Building Consumer Connections to Brands," *Journal of Consumer Psychology* 14 (1996), pp. 168–79. For some managerial guidelines, see Kevin Roberts, *Lovemarks: The Future beyond Brands* (New York: Powerhouse Books, 2004); and Douglas Atkins, *The Culting of Brands* (New York: Penguin Books, 2004).
 24. Paul Rittenberg and Maura Clancey, "Testing the Value of Media Engagement for Advertising Effectiveness," www.knowledgenetworks.com, Spring–Summer 2006, pp. 35–42.
 25. M. Berk Ataman, Carl F. Mela, and Harald J. van Heerde, "Building Brands," *Marketing Science* 27 (November–December 2008), pp. 1036–54.
 26. Walter Mossberg, "Is Bing the Thing?" *Wall Street Journal*, June 2, 2009, p. R4; Burt Heim, "The Dubbing of 'Bing,'" *BusinessWeek*, June 15, 2009, p. 23; Todd Wasserman, "Why Microsoft Chose the Name 'Bing,'" *Brandweek*, June 1, 2009, p. 33.
 27. Rachel Dodes, "From Tracksuits to Fast Track," *Wall Street Journal*, September 13, 2006.
 28. "42 Below," www.betterbydesign.org.nz, September 14, 2007.
 29. Amanda Baltazar, "Silly Brand Names Get Serious Attention," *Brandweek*, December 3, 2007, p. 4.
 30. Alina Wheeler, *Designing Brand Identity* (Hoboken, NJ: John Wiley & Sons, 2003).
 31. Pat Fallon and Fred Senn, *Juicing the Orange: How to Turn Creativity into a Powerful Business Advantage* (Cambridge, MA: Harvard Business School Press, 2006); Eric A. Yorkston and Geeta Menon, "A Sound Idea: Phonetic Effects of Brand Names on Consumer Judgments," *Journal of Consumer Research* 31 (June), pp. 43–51; Tina M. Lowery and L. J. Shrum, "Phonetic Symbolism and Brand Name Preference," *Journal of Consumer Research* 34 (October 2007), pp. 406–14.
 32. For some interesting theoretical perspectives, see Claudiu V. Dimofte and Richard F. Yalch, "Consumer Response to Polysemous Brand Slogans," *Journal of Consumer Research* 33 (March 2007), pp. 515–22.
 33. John R. Doyle and Paul A. Bottomly, "Dressed for the Occasion: Font-Product Congruity in the Perception of Logotype," *Journal of Consumer Psychology* 16 (2006), pp. 112–23; Kevin Lane Keller, Susan Heckler, and Michael J. Houston, "The Effects of Brand Name Suggestiveness on Advertising Recall," *Journal of Marketing* 62 (January 1998), pp. 48–57; For an

- in-depth examination of how brand names get developed, see Alex Frankel, *Wordcraft: The Art of Turning Little Words into Big Business* (New York: Crown Publishers, 2004).
34. Don Schultz and Heidi Schultz, *IMC: The Next Generation* (New York: McGraw-Hill, 2003); Don E. Schultz, Stanley I. Tannenbaum, and Robert F. Lauterborn, *Integrated Marketing Communications* (Lincolnwood, IL: NTC Business Books, 1993).
 35. Mohanbir Sawhney, "Don't Harmonize, Synchronize," *Harvard Business Review*, July–August 2001, pp. 101–8.
 36. David C. Court, John E. Forsyth, Greg C. Kelly, and Mark A. Loch, "The New Rules of Branding: Building Strong Brands Faster," *McKinsey White Paper Fall 1999*; Scott Bedbury, *A New Brand World* (New York: Viking Press, 2002).
 37. Sonia Reyes, "Cheerios: The Ride," *Brandweek*, September 23, 2002, pp. 14–16.
 38. Dawn Iacobucci and Bobby Calder, eds., *Kellogg on Integrated Marketing* (New York: John Wiley & Sons, 2003).
 39. Drew Madsen, "Olive Garden: Creating Value through an Integrated Brand Experience," presentation at Marketing Science Institute Conference, *Brand Orchestration*, Orlando, Florida, December 4, 2003.
 40. Michael Dunn and Scott Davis, "Building Brands from the Inside," *Marketing Management* (May–June 2003), pp. 32–37; Scott Davis and Michael Dunn, *Building the Brand-Driven Business* (New York: John Wiley & Sons, 2002).
 41. Stan Maklan and Simon Knox, *Competing on Value* (Upper Saddle River, NJ: Financial Times, Prentice Hall, 2000).
 42. Coeli Carr, "Seeking to Attract Top Prospects, Employers Brush Up on Brands," *New York Times*, September 10, 2006.
 43. The principles and examples from this passage are based on Colin Mitchell, "Selling the Brand Inside," *Harvard Business Review*, January 2002, pp. 99–105. For an in-depth discussion of how two organizations, QuikTrip and Wawa, have developed stellar internal branding programs, see Neeli Bendapudi and Venkat Bendapudi, "Creating the Living Brand," *Harvard Business Review*, May 2005, pp. 124–32.
 44. James H. McAlexander, John W. Schouten and Harold F. Koenig, "Building Brand Community," *Journal of Marketing* 66 (January 2002), pp. 38–54. For some notable examinations of brand communities, see René Algesheimer, Uptal M. Dholakia, and Andreas Herrmann, "The Social Influence of Brand Community: Evidence from European Car Clubs," *Journal of Marketing* 69 (July 2005), pp. 19–34; Albert M. Muniz Jr. and Hope Jensen Schau, "Religiosity in the Abandoned Apple Newton Brand Community," *Journal of Consumer Research* 31 (2005), pp. 412–32; Robert Kozinets, "Utopian Enterprise: Articulating the Meanings of *Star Trek's* Culture of Consumption," *Journal of Consumer Research* 28 (June 2001), pp. 67–87; John W. Schouten and James H. McAlexander, "Subcultures of Consumption: An Ethnography of New Bikers," *Journal of Consumer Research* 22 (June 1995), pp. 43–61.
 45. Albert M. Muniz Jr. and Thomas C. O'Guinn, "Brand Community," *Journal of Consumer Research* 27 (March 2001), pp. 412–32.
 46. Susan Fournier and Lara Lee, "The Seven Deadly Sins of Brand Community 'Management,'" Marketing Science Institute Special Report 08-208, 2008.
 47. Harley-Davidson USA, www.hog.com; Joseph Weber, "Harley Just Keeps on Cruisin'," *BusinessWeek*, November 6, 2006, pp. 71–72.
 48. Scott A. Thompson and Rajiv K. Sinha, "Brand Communities and New Product Adoption: The Influence and Limits of Oppositional Loyalty," *Journal of Marketing* 72 (November 2008), pp. 65–80.
 49. Deborah Roedder John, Barbara Loken, Kyeong-Heui Kim, and Alokparna Basu Monga, "Brand Concept Maps: A Methodology for Identifying Brand Association Networks," *Journal of Marketing Research* 43 (November 2006), pp. 549–63.
 50. In terms of related empirical insights, see Manoj K. Agrawal and Vithala Rao "An Empirical Comparison of Consumer-Based Measures of Brand Equity," *Marketing Letters* 7 (July 1996), pp. 237–47; and Walfried Lassar, Banwari Mittal, and Arun Sharma, "Measuring Customer-Based Brand Equity," *Journal of Consumer Marketing* 12 (1995), pp. 11–19.
 51. "The Best Global Brands," *BusinessWeek*, June 19, 2009; The article ranks and critiques the 100 best global brands using the valuation method developed by Interbrand. For more discussion on some brand winners and losers, see Matt Haig, *Brand Royalty: How the Top 100 Brands Thrive and Survive* (London: Kogan Page, 2004); Matt Haig, *Brand Failures: The Truth about the 100 Biggest Branding Mistakes of All Time* (London: Kogan Page, 2003); For an academic discussion of valuing brand equity, see V. Srinivasan, Chan Su Park, and Dae Ryun Chang, "An Approach to the Measurement, Analysis, and Prediction of Brand Equity and Its Sources," *Management Science* 51 (September 2005), pp. 1433–48.
 52. Mark Sherrington, *Added Value: The Alchemy of Brand-Led Growth* (Hampshire, UK: Palgrave Macmillan, 2003).
 53. For some discussion of what factors determine long-term branding success, see Allen P. Adamson, *Brand Simple* (New York: Palgrave Macmillan, 2006).
 54. Nikhil Bahdur and John Jullens, "New Life for Tired Brands," *Strategy+Business* 50 (Spring 2008).
 55. David Lieberman, "Discovery Chief Takes a Network on a Wild Ride," *USA Today*, September 2, 2009, pp. 1B–2B; Discovery Communications, www.corporate.discovery.com; Kenneth Hein, "Consumers Clinging to Old Favorite Brands," *Brandweek*, January 20, 2009; Linda Moss and Linda Haugsted, "Discovery Times New Branding Campaign to 'Deadliest Catch' Debut," *Multichannel News*, March 31, 2008.

56. Natalie Mizik and Robert Jacobson, "Trading Off between Value Creation and Value Appropriation: The Financial Implications of Shifts in Strategic Emphasis," *Journal of Marketing* 67 (January 2003), pp. 63–76.
57. Larry Light and Joan Kiddon, *Six Rules for Brand Revitalization: Learn How Companies Like McDonald's Can Re-Energize Their Brands* (Wharton School Publishing, 2009).
58. Jeff Cioletti, "The Passion of Pabst," *Beverage World*, January 2007, pp. 24–28; Jeremy Mullman, "Conspicuous (Downscale) Consumption: Pabst Sees 25% Sales Growth," *Advertising Age*, September 16, 2009.
59. Evan West, "Smells Like a Billion Bucks," *Fast Company*, May 2009, pp. 44–46; Patricia Winters Lauro, "Old Spice Begins a Revival as a Body-Care Line for College-Age Men, with Towelettes," *New York Times*, April 29, 2002.
60. Rebecca J. Slotegraaf and Koen Pauwels, "The Impact of Brand Equity and Innovation on the Long-Term Effectiveness of Promotions," *Journal of Marketing Research* 45 (June 2008), pp. 293–306.
61. Keith Naughton, "Fixing Cadillac," *Newsweek*, May 28, 2001, pp. 36–37.
62. Elizabeth Woyke, "Paul Stuart Tries to Unstuff the Shirts," *BusinessWeek*, October 8, 2007, p. 86.
63. Peter Farquhar, "Managing Brand Equity," *Marketing Research* 1 (September 1989), pp. 24–33.
64. Steven M. Shugan, "Branded Variants," 1989 AMA Educators' Proceedings (Chicago: American Marketing Association, 1989), pp. 33–38; M. Bergen, S. Dutta, and S. M. Shugan, "Branded Variants: A Retail Perspective," *Journal of Marketing Research* 33 (February 1996), pp. 9–21.
65. Adam Bass, "Licensed Extension—Stretching to Communicate," *Journal of Brand Management* 12 (September 2004), pp. 31–38; also see David A. Aaker, *Building Strong Brands* (New York: Free Press, 1996).
66. Jean Halliday, "Troubled Automakers' Golden Goose," *AutoWeek*, August 14, 2006; Becky Ebenkamp, "The Creative License," *Brandweek*, June 9, 2003, pp. 36–40; "Top 100 Global Licensors," *License! Global*, April 1, 2009.
67. For comprehensive corporate branding guidelines, see James R. Gregory, *The Best of Branding: Best Practices in Corporate Branding* (New York: McGraw-Hill, 2004). For some international perspectives, see Majken Schultz, Mary Jo Hatch, and Mogens Holten Larsen, eds., *The Expressive Organization: Linking Identity, Reputation, and Corporate Brand* (Oxford, UK: Oxford University Press, 2000); and Majken Schultz, Yun Mi Antorini, and Fabian F. Csaba, eds., *Corporate Branding: Purpose, People, and Process* (Denmark: Copenhagen Business School Press, 2005).
68. Guido Berens, Cees B. M. van Riel, and Gerrit H. van Bruggen, "Corporate Associations and Consumer Product Responses: The Moderating Role of Corporate Brand Dominance," *Journal of Marketing* 69 (July 2005), pp. 35–48; Zeynep Gürhan-Canli and Rajeev Batra, "When Corporate Image Affects Product Evaluations: The Moderating Role of Perceived Risk," *Journal of Marketing Research* 41 (May 2004), pp. 197–205; Kevin Lane Keller and David A. Aaker, "Corporate-Level Marketing: The Impact of Credibility on a Company's Brand Extensions," *Corporate Reputation Review* 1 (August 1998), pp. 356–78; Thomas J. Brown and Peter Dacin, "The Company and the Product: Corporate Associations and Consumer Product Responses," *Journal of Marketing* 61 (January 1997), pp. 68–84; Gabriel J. Biehal and Daniel A. Sheinin, "The Influence of Corporate Messages on the Product Portfolio," *Journal of Marketing* 71 (April 2007), pp. 12–25.
69. Vithala R. Rao, Manoj K. Agarwal, and Denise Dalhoff, "How Is Manifest Branding Strategy Related to the Intangible Value of a Corporation?" *Journal of Marketing* 68 (October 2004), pp. 126–41. For an examination of the financial impact of brand portfolio decisions, see Neil A. Morgan and Lopo L. Rego, "Brand Portfolio Strategy and Firm Performance," *Journal of Marketing* 73 (January 2009), pp. 59–74; S. Cem Bahadir, Sundar G. Bharadwaj, and Rajendra K. Srivastava, "Financial Value of Brands in Mergers and Acquisitions: Is Value in the Eye of the Beholder?" *Journal of Marketing* 72 (November 2008), pp. 49–64.
70. William J. Holstein, "The Incalculable Value of Building Brands," *Chief Executive*, April–May 2006, pp. 52–56.
71. David A. Aaker, *Brand Portfolio Strategy: Creating Relevance, Differentiation, Energy, Leverage, and Clarity* (New York: Free Press, 2004).
72. Christopher Hosford, "A Transformative Experience," *Sales & Marketing Management* 158 (June 2006), pp. 32–36; Mike Beirne and Javier Benito, "Starwood Uses Personnel to Personalize Marketing," *Brandweek*, April 24, 2006, p. 9.
73. Jack Trout, *Differentiate or Die: Survival in Our Era of Killer Competition* (New York: John Wiley & Sons, 2000); Kamalini Ramdas and Mohanbir Sawhney, "A Cross-Functional Approach to Evaluating Multiple Line Extensions for Assembled Products," *Management Science* 47 (January 2001), pp. 22–36.
74. Nirmalya Kumar, "Kill a Brand, Keep a Customer," *Harvard Business Review*, December 2003, pp. 87–95.
75. For a methodological approach for assessing the extent and nature of cannibalization, see Charlotte H. Mason and George R. Milne, "An Approach for Identifying Cannibalization within Product Line Extensions and Multibrand Strategies," *Journal of Business Research* 31 (October–November 1994), pp. 163–70.
76. Mark Ritson, "Should You Launch a Fighter Brand?" *Harvard Business Review*, October 2009, pp. 87–94.
77. Paul W. Farris, "The Chevrolet Corvette," Case UVA-M-320, The Darden Graduate Business School Foundation, University of Virginia, Charlottesville, 1988.
78. Byung-Do Kim and Mary W. Sullivan, "The Effect of Parent Brand Experience on Line Extension Trial and Repeat Purchase," *Marketing Letters* 9 (April 1998), pp. 181–93.

79. John Milewicz and Paul Herbig, "Evaluating the Brand Extension Decision Using a Model of Reputation Building," *Journal of Product & Brand Management* 3 (January 1994), pp. 39–47; Kevin Lane Keller and David A. Aaker, "The Effects of Sequential Introduction of Brand Extensions," *Journal of Marketing Research* 29 (February 1992), pp. 35–50.
80. Valarie A. Taylor and William O. Bearden, "Ad Spending on Brand Extensions: Does Similarity Matter?" *Journal of Brand Management* 11 (September 2003), pp. 63–74; Sheri Bridges, Kevin Lane Keller, and Sanjay Sood, "Communication Strategies for Brand Extensions: Enhancing Perceived Fit by Establishing Explanatory Links," *Journal of Advertising* 29 (Winter 2000), pp. 1–11; Daniel C. Smith, "Brand Extension and Advertising Efficiency: What Can and Cannot Be Expected," *Journal of Advertising Research* (November–December 1992), pp. 11–20; Daniel C. Smith and C. Whan Park, "The Effects of Brand Extensions on Market Share and Advertising Efficiency," *Journal of Marketing Research* 29 (August 1992), pp. 296–313.
81. Ralf van der Lans, Rik Pieters, and Michel Wedel, "Competitive Brand Salience," *Marketing Science* 27 (September–October 2008), pp. 922–31.
82. Subramanian Balachander and Sanjoy Ghose, "Reciprocal Spillover Effects: A Strategic Benefit of Brand Extensions," *Journal of Marketing* 67 (January 2003), pp. 4–13.
83. Bharat N. Anand and Ron Shachar, "Brands as Beacons: A New Source of Loyalty to Multiproduct Firms," *Journal of Marketing Research* 41 (May 2004), pp. 135–50.
84. Kevin Lane Keller and David A. Aaker, "The Effects of Sequential Introduction of Brand Extensions," *Journal of Marketing Research* 29 (February 1992), pp. 35–50. For consumer processing implications, see Huifung Mao and H. Shanker Krishnan, "Effects of Prototype and Exemplar Fit on Brand Extension Evaluations: A Two-Process Contingency Model," *Journal of Consumer Research* 33 (June 2006), pp. 41–49; Byung Chul Shine, Jongwon Park, and Robert S. Wyer Jr., "Brand Synergy Effects in Multiple Brand Extensions," *Journal of Marketing Research* 44 (November 2007), pp. 663–70.
85. Maureen Morrin, "The Impact of Brand Extensions on Parent Brand Memory Structures and Retrieval Processes," *Journal of Marketing Research* 36 (November 1999), pp. 517–25; John A. Quelch and David Kenny, "Extend Profits, Not Product Lines," *Harvard Business Review*, September–October 1994, pp. 153–60; Perspectives from the Editors, "The Logic of Product-Line Extensions," *Harvard Business Review*, November–December 1994, pp. 53–62.
86. Al Ries and Jack Trout, *Positioning: The Battle for Your Mind, 20th Anniversary Edition* (New York: McGraw-Hill, 2000).
87. David A. Aaker, *Brand Portfolio Strategy: Creating Relevance, Differentiation, Energy, Leverage, and Clarity* (New York: Free Press, 2004).
88. Mary W. Sullivan, "Measuring Image Spillovers in Umbrella-Branded Products," *Journal of Business* 63 (July 1990), pp. 309–29.
89. Deborah Roedder John, Barbara Loken, and Christopher Joiner, "The Negative Impact of Extensions: Can Flagship Products Be Diluted," *Journal of Marketing* 62 (January 1998), pp. 19–32; Susan M. Broniarczyk and Joseph W. Alba, "The Importance of the Brand in Brand Extension," *Journal of Marketing Research* 31 (May 1994), pp. 214–28 (this entire issue of *JMR* is devoted to brands and brand equity); Barbara Loken and Deborah Roedder John, "Diluting Brand Beliefs: When Do Brand Extensions Have a Negative Impact?" *Journal of Marketing* 57 (July 1993), pp. 71–84. See also, Chris Pullig, Carolyn Simmons, and Richard G. Netemeyer, "Brand Dilution: When Do New Brands Hurt Existing Brands?" *Journal of Marketing* 70 (April 2006), pp. 52–66; R. Ahluwalia and Z. Gürhan-Canli, "The Effects of Extensions on the Family Brand Name: An Accessibility-Diagnosticity Perspective," *Journal of Consumer Research* 27 (December 2000), pp. 371–81; Z. Gürhan-Canli and M. Durairaj, "The Effects of Extensions on Brand Name Dilution and Enhancement," *Journal of Marketing Research* 35 (November 1998), pp. 464–73; S. J. Milberg, C. W. Park, and M. S. McCarthy, "Managing Negative Feedback Effects Associated with Brand Extensions: The Impact of Alternative Branding Strategies," *Journal of Consumer Psychology* 6 (1997), pp. 119–40.
90. See also, Franziska Völckner and Henrik Sattler, "Drivers of Brand Extension Success," *Journal of Marketing* 70 (April 2006), pp. 1–17.
91. For recent research on extension evaluations, see Alokparna Basu Monga and Deborah Roedder John, "Cultural Differences in Brand Extension Evaluation: The Influence of Analytical versus Holistic Thinking," *Journal of Marketing Research* 33 (March 2007), pp. 529–36; James L. Oakley, Adam Duhachek, Subramanian Balachander, and S. Sriram, "Order of Entry and the Moderating Role of Comparison Brands in Extension Evaluations," *Journal of Consumer Research* 34 (February 2008), pp. 706–12; Junsang Yeo and Jongwon Park, "Effects of Parent-Extension Similarity and Self Regulatory Focus on Evaluations of Brand Extensions," *Journal of Consumer Psychology* 16 (2006), pp. 272–82; Catherine W. M. Yeung and Robert S. Wyer, "Does Loving a Brand Mean Loving Its Products? The Role of Brand-Elicited Affect in Brand Extension Evaluations," *Journal of Marketing Research* 43 (November 2005), pp. 495–506; Huifang Mao and H. Shankar Krishnan, "Effects of Prototype and Exemplar Fit on Brand Extension Evaluations: A Two-Process Contingency Model," *Journal of Consumer Research* 33 (June 2006), pp. 41–49; Rohini Ahluwalia, "How Far Can a Brand Stretch? Understanding the Role of Self-Construal," *Journal of Marketing Research* 45 (June 2008), pp. 337–50.
92. Pierre Berthon, Morris B. Holbrook, James M. Hulbert, and Leyland F. Pitt, "Viewing Brands in Multiple

- Dimensions,” *MIT Sloan Management Review* (Winter 2007), pp. 37–43.
93. Andrea Rothman, “France’s Bic Bets U.S. Consumers Will Go for Perfume on the Cheap,” *Wall Street Journal*, January 12, 1989.
 94. Roland T. Rust, Valerie A. Zeithaml, and Katherine A. Lemon, “Measuring Customer Equity and Calculating Marketing ROI,” Rajiv Grover and Marco Vriens, eds., *Handbook of Marketing Research* (Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage Publications, 2006), pp. 588–601; Roland T. Rust, Valerie A. Zeithaml, and Katherine A. Lemon, *Driving Customer Equity* (New York: Free Press, 2000).
 95. Robert C. Blattberg and John Deighton, “Manage Marketing by the Customer Equity Test,” *Harvard Business Review*, July–August 1996, pp. 136–44.
 96. Robert C. Blattberg and Jacquelyn S. Thomas, “Valuing, Analyzing, and Managing the Marketing Function Using Customer Equity Principles,” Dawn Iacobucci, ed., *Kellogg on Marketing* (New York: John Wiley & Sons, 2002); Robert C. Blattberg, Gary Getz, and Jacquelyn S. Thomas, *Customer Equity: Building and Managing Relationships as Valuable Assets* (Boston: Harvard Business School Press, 2001).
 97. Much of this section is based on: Robert Leone, Vithala Rao, Kevin Lane Keller, Man Luo, Leigh McAlister, and Rajendra Srivastava, “Linking Brand Equity to Customer Equity,” *Journal of Service Research* 9 (November 2006), pp. 125–38. This special issue is devoted to customer equity and has a number of thought-provoking articles.
 98. Niraj Dawar, “What Are Brands Good For?” *MIT Sloan Management Review* (Fall 2004), pp. 31–37.
- ## Chapter 10
1. Ilana DeBare, “Cleaning Up without Dot-coms,” *San Francisco Chronicle*, October 8, 2006; “Marketers of the Next Generation,” *Brandweek*, April 17, 2006, p. 30.
 2. Al Ries and Jack Trout, *Positioning: The Battle for Your Mind, 20th Anniversary Edition* (New York: McGraw-Hill, 2000).
 3. Nat Ives, “Donaton: EW Is Not a Celebrity Magazine,” *Advertising Age*, June 23, 2008, p. 12.
 4. Michael J. Lanning and Lynn W. Phillips, “Building Market-Focused Organizations,” Gemini Consulting White Paper, 1991.
 5. Kevin Maney, “Hello, Ma Google,” *Condé Nast Portfolio*, October 2007, pp. 49–50.
 6. David A. Aaker, “The Relevance of Brand Relevance,” *Strategy+Business* 35 (Summer 2004), pp. 1–10; David A. Aaker, *Brand Portfolio Strategy: Creating Relevance, Differentiation, Energy, Leverage, and Clarity* (New York: Free Press, 2004).
 7. Elaine Wong, “Unilever Marketer Reveals Bertolli’s Secret Sauce,” *Brandweek*, August 28, 2009.
 8. Allan D. Shocker, “Determining the Structure of Product-Markets: Practices, Issues, and Suggestions,” Barton A. Weitz and Robin Wensley, eds., *Handbook of Marketing* (London: Sage, 2002), pp. 106–25. See also, Bruce H. Clark and David B. Montgomery, “Managerial Identification of Competitors,” *Journal of Marketing* 63 (July 1999), pp. 67–83.
 9. “What Business Are You In? Classic Advice from Theodore Levitt,” *Harvard Business Review*, October 2006, pp. 127–37. See also Theodore Levitt’s seminal article, “Marketing Myopia,” *Harvard Business Review*, July–August 1960, pp. 45–56.
 10. Jeffrey F. Rayport and Bernard J. Jaworski, *e-Commerce* (New York: McGraw-Hill, 2001), p. 53.
 11. Richard A. D’Aveni, “Competitive Pressure Systems: Mapping and Managing Multimarket Contact,” *MIT Sloan Management Review* (Fall 2002), pp. 39–49.
 12. For discussion of some of the long-term implications of marketing activities, see Koen Pauwels, “How Dynamic Consumer Response, Competitor Response, Company Support, and Company Inertia Shape Long-Term Marketing Effectiveness,” *Marketing Science* 23 (Fall 2004), pp. 596–610; Koen Pauwels, Dominique M. Hanssens, and S. Siddarth, “The Long-term Effects of Price Promotions on Category Incidence, Brand Choice, and Purchase Quantity,” *Journal of Marketing Research* 34 (November 2002), pp. 421–39; and Marnik Dekimpe and Dominique Hanssens, “Sustained Spending and Persistent Response: A New Look at Long-term Marketing Profitability,” *Journal of Marketing Research* 36 (November 1999), pp. 397–412.
 13. Kevin Lane Keller, Brian Sternthal, and Alice Tybout, “Three Questions You Need to Ask about Your Brand,” *Harvard Business Review*, September 2002, pp. 80–89.
 14. Michael Applebaum, “Comfy to Cool: A Brand Swivel,” *Brandweek*, May 2, 2005, pp. 18–19.
 15. Thomas A. Brunner and Michaela Wänke, “The Reduced and Enhanced Impact of Shared Features on Individual Brand Evaluations,” *Journal of Consumer Psychology* 16 (April 2006), pp. 101–11.
 16. Professor Brian Sternthal, “Miller Lite Case,” *Kellogg Graduate School of Management, Northwestern University*.
 17. Scott Bedbury, *A New Brand World* (New York: Viking Press, 2002).
 18. Patrick Tickle, Kevin Lane Keller, and Keith Richey, “Branding in High-Technology Markets,” *Market Leader* 22 (Autumn 2003), pp. 21–26.
 19. Jim Hopkins, “When the Devil Is in the Design,” *USA Today*, December 31, 2001.
 20. Keith Naughton, “Ford’s ‘Perfect Storm,’” *Newsweek*, September 17, 2001, pp. 48–50.
 21. Susan M. Broniarczyk and Andrew D. Gershoff, “The Reciprocal Effects of Brand Equity and Trivial Attributes,” *Journal of Marketing Research* 40 (May 2003), pp. 161–75; Gregory S. Carpenter, Rashi Glazer, and Kent Nakamoto, “Meaningful Brands from Meaningless Differentiation: The Dependence on Irrelevant Attributes,” *Journal of Marketing Research* 31 (August 1994), pp. 339–50.

22. Kerry Capell, "Thinking Simple at Philips," *BusinessWeek*, December 11, 2006, p. 50; Philips, www.philips.com.
23. Michael E. Porter, *Competitive Strategy: Techniques for Analyzing Industries and Competitors* (New York: Free Press, 1980).
24. Francis J. Kelly III and Barry Silverstein, *The Breakaway Brand* (New York: McGraw-Hill, 2005).
25. Willow Duttge, "Counting Sleep," *Advertising Age*, June 5, 2006, pp. 4, 50.
26. Patrick Barwise, *Simply Better: Winning and Keeping Customers by Delivering What Matters Most* (Cambridge, MA: Harvard Business School Press, 2004).
27. Louise Lee, "Can Progressive Stay in Gear?" *BusinessWeek*, August 8, 2004, p. 44; Robert J. Dolan and Hermann Simon, "Power Pricers," *Across the Board*, May 1997, pp. 18–19; Carol J. Loomis, "Sex. Reefer? And Auto Insurance," *Fortune*, August 7, 1995, p. 76; Progressive, www.progressive.com.
28. "The 25 Best Sales Forces," *Sales & Marketing Management* (July 1998), pp. 32–50.
29. William C. Copacino, *Supply Chain Management* (Boca Raton, FL: St. Lucie Press, 1997).
30. Piet Levy, "Express Yourself," *Marketing News*, June 15, 2009, p. 6.
31. James H. Gilmore and B. Joseph Pine II, *Authenticity: What Consumers Really Want* (Cambridge, MA: Harvard Business School Press, 2007); Lynn B. Upshaw, *Truth: The New Rules for Marketing in a Skeptical World* (New York: AMACOM, 2007).
32. Owen Jenkins, "Gimme Some Lovin'," *Marketing News*, May 15, 2009, p. 19.
33. Heather Landi, "Raise a Glass," *Beverage World*, October 2009, pp. 16–19.
34. Marc Gobé, *Emotional Branding: The New Paradigm for Connecting Brands to People* (New York: Allworth Press, 2001).
35. Kevin Roberts, *Lovemarks: The Future Beyond Brands*, expanded edition (New York: Powerhouse Books, 2005); Kevin Roberts, *The Lovemarks Effect: Winning in the Consumer Revolution* (New York: Powerhouse Books, 2005); "The Lovemarks Heart Beat: January 2010," *Lovemarks*, www.lovemarks.com.
36. Hamish Pringle and Peter Field, "Why Emotional Messages Beat Rational Ones," *Advertising Age*, March 2, 2009, p. 13; Hamish Pringle and Peter Field, *Brand Immortality: How Brands Can Live Long and Prosper* (Philadelphia: Kogan Page, 2009).
37. Rajendra S. Sisodia, David B. Wolfe, and Jagdish N. Sheth, *Firms of Endearment: How World-Class Companies Benefit Profit from Passion & Purpose* (Upper Saddle River, NJ: Wharton School Publishing, 2007).
38. Ronald Grover, "Selling by Storytelling," *BusinessWeek*, May 25, 2009.
39. Randall Ringer and Michael Thibodeau, "A Breakthrough Approach to Brand Creation," *Verse, The Narrative Branding Company*, www.versegroup.com.
40. Patrick Hanlon, *Primal Branding: Create Zealots for Your Brand, Your Company, and Your Future* (New York: Free Press, 2006); ThinkTopia, www.thinktopia.com.
41. Hillary Chura, "McD's Mass Marketing Loses Luster," *Crain's Chicago Business*, June 16, 2004.
42. Douglas Holt, *How Brands Become Icons: The Principle of Cultural Branding* (Cambridge, MA: Harvard Business School Press, 2004); Douglas Holt, "Branding as Cultural Activism," www.zibs.com; Douglas Holt, "What Becomes an Icon Most," *Harvard Business Review*, March 2003, pp. 43–49; See also, Grant McCracken, *Culture and Consumption II: Markets, Meaning, and Brand Management* (Bloomington, IN: Indiana University Press, 2005).
43. Craig Thompson, "Brands as Culturally Embedded Resources," 43rd AMA Sheth Foundation Doctoral Consortium, University of Missouri, June 6, 2008. See also research by John Sherry and Robert Kozinets, including John F. Sherry Jr., Robert V. Kozinets, Adam Duhachek, Benét DeBerry-Spence, Krittinee Nuttavuthisit and Diana Storm, "Gendered Behavior in a Male Preserve: Role Playing at ESPN Zone Chicago," *Journal of Consumer Psychology* 14, nos. 1 & 2 (2004), pp. 151–58; Stephen Brown, Robert V. Kozinets, and John F. Sherry Jr., "Teaching Old Brands New Tricks: Retro Branding and the Revival of Brand Meaning," *Journal of Marketing* 67 (July 2003), pp. 19–33.
44. Nick Wreden, *Fusion Branding: How to Forge Your Brand for the Future* (Atlanta: Accountability Press, 2002); Fusion Branding, www.fusionbranding.com.
45. Andrew Ross Sorkin and Andrew Martin, "Coca-Cola Agrees to Buy Vitaminwater," *New York Times*, May 26, 2007.
46. Jeffrey Gangemi, "Small Company, Big Brand," *BusinessWeek*, August 28, 2006.
47. Kurt Badenhausen and Christina Settimi, "What's New," *Forbes*, October 27, 2008, p. 133.

Chapter 11

1. Luke Mullins, "Muscling Up in Sports Gear," *U.S. News & World Report*, December 10, 2007, pp. 57–58; Jeremy Mullman, "Protecting This Brand While Running Ahead," *Advertising Age*, January 12, 2009, p. 16; Elaine Wong, "Under Armour Makes a Long-Run Calculation," *Brandweek*, January 19, 2009, p. 28; Stephanie N. Mehta, "Under Armour Reboots," *Fortune*, February 2, 2009, pp. 29–33.
2. For a detailed academic treatment of a number of issues on competition, see the Special Issue on Competitive Responsiveness, *Marketing Science* 24 (Winter 2005).
3. Sandra Ward, "Warming Up the Copier," *Barron's*, May 1, 2006, pp. 19, 21; William M. Bulkeley, "Xerox Tries to Go Beyond Copiers," *Wall Street Journal*, February 24, 2009, p. B5; Nanette Byrnes and Roger O. Crockett, "An Historic Succession at Xerox," *BusinessWeek*, June 8, 2009, pp. 18–22.

4. Starbucks, www.starbucks.com/aboutus/overview.asp, December 1, 2009.
5. Brian Wansink, "Can Package Size Accelerate Usage Volume?" *Journal of Marketing* 60 (July 1996), pp. 1–14; See also, Priya Raghuram and Eric A. Greenleaf, "Ratios in Proportion: What Should the Shape of the Package Be?" *Journal of Marketing* 70 (April 2006), pp. 95–107; and Valerie Folkes and Shashi Matta, "The Effect of Package Shape on Consumers' Judgments of Product Volume: Attention as a Mental Contaminant," *Journal of Consumer Research* 31 (September 2004), pp. 390–401.
6. John D. Cripps, "Heuristics and Biases in Timing the Replacement of Durable Products," *Journal of Consumer Research* 21 (September 1994), pp. 304–18.
7. George Stalk Jr. and Rob Lachanauer, "Hardball: Five Killer Strategies for Trouncing the Competition," *Harvard Business Review*, April 2004, pp. 62–71; Richard D'Aveni, "The Empire Strikes Back: Counterrevolutionary Strategies for Industry Leaders," *Harvard Business Review*, November 2002, pp. 66–74.
8. Nirmalya Kumar, Lisa Sheer, and Philip Kotler, "From Market Driven to Market Driving," *European Management Journal* 18 (April 2000), pp. 129–42.
9. Much of the remaining section on proactive marketing is based on a provocative book by Leonardo Araujo and Rogerio Gava, *The Proactive Enterprise: How to Anticipate Market Changes* (In Press).
10. Jonathan Glancey, "The Private World of the Walkman," *Guardian*, October 11, 1999.
11. These six defense strategies, as well as the five attack strategies, are taken from Philip Kotler and Ravi Singh, "Marketing Warfare in the 1980s," *Journal of Business Strategy* (Winter 1981), pp. 30–41.
12. Michael E. Porter, *Market Signals, Competitive Strategy: Techniques for Analyzing Industries and Competitors* (New York: Free Press, 1998), pp. 75–87; Jaideep Prabhu and David W. Stewart, "Signaling Strategies in Competitive Interaction: Building Reputations and Hiding the Truth," *Journal of Marketing Research* 38 (February 2001), pp. 62–72.
13. Roger J. Calantone and Kim E. Schatzel, "Strategic Foretelling: Communication-Based Antecedents of a Firm's Propensity to Preannounce," *Journal of Marketing* 64 (January 2000), pp. 17–30; Jehoshua Eliashberg and Thomas S. Robertson, "New Product Preannouncing Behavior: A Market Signaling Study," *Journal of Marketing Research* 25 (August 1988), pp. 282–92.
14. Thomas S. Robertson, Jehoshua Eliashberg, and Talia Rymon, "New-Product Announcement Signals and Incumbent Reactions," *Journal of Marketing* 59 (July 1995), pp. 1–15.
15. Yuhong Wu, Sridhar Balasubramanian, and Vijay Mahajan, "When Is a Preannounced New Product Likely to Be Delayed?" *Journal of Marketing* 68 (April 2004), pp. 101–13; Barry L. Bayus, Sanjay Jain, and Ambar G. Rao, "Truth or Consequences: An Analysis of Vaporware and New-Product Announcements," *Journal of Marketing Research* 38 (February 2001), pp. 3–13.
16. Kevin Kelleher, "Why FedEx Is Gaining Ground," *Business 2.0*, October 2003, pp. 56–57; Charles Haddad, "FedEx: Gaining on Ground," *BusinessWeek*, December 16, 2002, pp. 126–28.
17. "Sara Lee Cleans Out Its Cupboards," *Fortune*, March 7, 2005, p. 38; Jane Sassen, "How Sara Lee Left Hanes in Its Skivvies," *BusinessWeek*, September 18, 2006, p. 40.
18. J. Scott Armstrong and Kesten C. Green, "Competitor-Oriented Objectives: The Myth of Market Share," *International Journal of Business* 12 (Winter 2007), pp. 115–34; Stuart E. Jackson, *Where Value Hides: A New Way to Uncover Profitable Growth for Your Business* (New York: John Wiley & Sons, 2006).
19. Nirmalya Kumar, *Marketing as Strategy* (Cambridge, MA: Harvard Business School Press, 2004); Philip Kotler and Paul N. Bloom, "Strategies for High-Market-Share Companies," *Harvard Business Review*, November–December 1975, pp. 63–72.
20. Robert D. Buzzell and Frederick D. Wiersema, "Successful Share-Building Strategies," *Harvard Business Review*, January–February 1981, pp. 135–44.
21. Linda Hellofs and Robert Jacobson, "Market Share and Customer's Perceptions of Quality: When Can Firms Grow Their Way to Higher versus Lower Quality?" *Journal of Marketing* 63 (January 1999), pp. 16–25.
22. John Downey, "FairPoint Struggles with Merger, Declining Stock," *Charlotte Business Journal*, March 19, 2009; John Downey, FairPoint Faces Enduring Debt, Service Headaches," *Charlotte Business Journal*, September 15, 2009.
23. Jon Birger, "Second-Mover Advantage," *Fortune*, March 20, 2006, pp. 20–21.
24. This paragraph is based on a talk by John Bello at the Tuck School of Business at Dartmouth College on November 18, 2010.
25. Venkatesh Shankar, Gregory Carpenter, and Lakshman Krishnamurthi, "Late-Mover Advantage: How Innovative Late Entrants Outsell Pioneers," *Journal of Marketing Research* 35 (February 1998), pp. 54–70; Gregory S. Carpenter and Kent Nakamoto, "The Impact of Consumer Preference Formation on Marketing Objectives and Competitive Second-Mover Strategies," *Journal of Consumer Psychology* 5 (1996), pp. 325–58; Gregory S. Carpenter and Kent Nakamoto, "Competitive Strategies for Late Entry into a Market with a Dominant Brand," *Management Science* (October 1990), pp. 1268–78.
26. Megan Johnston, "The Ketchup Strategy," *Forbes*, November 13, 2006, p. 185.
27. Michael V. Copeland, "These Boots Really Were Made for Walking," *Business 2.0*, October 2004, pp. 72–74.
28. Katrina Booker, "The Pepsi Machine," *Fortune*, February 6, 2006, pp. 68–72.

29. Theodore Levitt, "Innovative Imitation," *Harvard Business Review*, September–October 1966, p. 63. Also see, Steven P. Schnaars, *Managing Imitation Strategies: How Later Entrants Seize Markets from Pioneers* (New York: Free Press, 1994).
30. Stuart F. Brown, "The Company That Out-Harleys Harley," *Fortune*, September 28, 1998, pp. 56–57; S&S Cycle, www.sscycle.com.
31. Melita Marie Garza, "Illinois Tool Works Stock Continues to Suffer Since Acquisition of Firm," *Chicago Tribune*, November 16, 2000; ITW, www.itw.com.
32. Jayne O'Donnell, "Family Rolling to Success on Tire Rack," *USA Today*, December 8, 2003.
33. Mark Morrison, "This Wildcatter Feels Right at Home in Gabon," *BusinessWeek*, June 5, 2006, p. 63.
34. Reported in E. R. Linneman and L. J. Stanton, *Making Niche Marketing Work* (New York: McGraw-Hill, 1991).
35. Thomas A. Fogarty, "Keeping Zippo's Flame Eternal," *USA Today*, June 24, 2003; Michael Learmonth, "Zippo Reignites Brand with Social Media, New Products," *Advertising Age*, August 10, 2009, p. 12; Zippo, www.zippo.com.
36. Kathleen Kingsbury, "The Cell Islands," *Time*, November 20, 2006, p. G20; "Traveling Made Easy with the New BlackBerry Curve 8520," *Digicel-News*, <http://digicel-jamaica-news-procomm.blogspot.com>, January 12, 2010.
37. Some authors distinguished additional stages. Wasson suggested a stage of competitive turbulence between growth and maturity. See Chester R. Wasson, *Dynamic Competitive Strategy and Product Life Cycles* (Austin, TX: Austin Press, 1978). Maturity describes a stage of sales growth slowdown and saturation, a stage of flat sales after sales have peaked.
38. John E. Swan and David R. Rink, "Fitting Market Strategy to Varying Product Life Cycles," *Business Horizons*, January–February 1982, pp. 72–76; Gerald J. Tellis and C. Merle Crawford, "An Evolutionary Approach to Product Growth Theory," *Journal of Marketing* 45 (Fall 1981), pp. 125–34.
39. William E. Cox Jr., "Product Life Cycles as Marketing Models," *Journal of Business* (October 1967), pp. 375–84.
40. Jordan P. Yale, "The Strategy of Nylon's Growth," *Modern Textiles Magazine*, February 1964, p. 32. Also see Theodore Levitt, "Exploit the Product Life Cycle," *Harvard Business Review*, November–December 1965, pp. 81–94.
41. Chester R. Wasson, "How Predictable Are Fashion and Other Product Life Cycles?" *Journal of Marketing* 32 (July 1968), pp. 36–43.
42. *Ibid.*
43. William H. Reynolds, "Cars and Clothing: Understanding Fashion Trends," *Journal of Marketing* 32 (July 1968), pp. 44–49.
44. Bryan Curtis, "Trivial Pursuit," *Slate.com*, April 13, 2005; Patrick Butters, "What Biggest-Selling Adult Game Still Cranks Out Vexing Questions?" *Insight on the News*, January 26, 1998, p. 39.
45. Robert D. Buzzell, "Competitive Behavior and Product Life Cycles," John S. Wright and Jack Goldstucker, eds., *New Ideas for Successful Marketing* (Chicago: American Marketing Association, 1956), p. 51.
46. Rajesh J. Chandy, Gerard J. Tellis, Deborah J. MacInnis, and Pattana Thaivanich, "What to Say When: Advertising Appeals in Evolving Markets," *Journal of Marketing Research* 38 (November 2001), pp. 399–414.
47. As reported in Joseph T. Vesey, "The New Competitors: They Think in Terms of Speed to Market," *Academy of Management Executive* 5 (May 1991), pp. 23–33; and Brian Dumaine, "How Managers Can Succeed through Speed," *Fortune*, February 13, 1989, pp. 54–59.
48. Glen L. Urban et al., "Market Share Rewards to Pioneering Brands: An Empirical Analysis and Strategic Implications," *Management Science* (June 1986), pp. 645–59; William T. Robinson and Claes Fornell, "Sources of Market Pioneer Advantages in Consumer Goods Industries," *Journal of Marketing Research* 22 (August 1985), pp. 305–17.
49. Gregory S. Carpenter and Kent Nakamoto, "Consumer Preference Formation and Pioneering Advantage," *Journal of Marketing Research* 26 (August 1989), pp. 285–98.
50. William T. Robinson and Sungwook Min, "Is the First to Market the First to Fail? Empirical Evidence for Industrial Goods Businesses," *Journal of Marketing Research* 39 (February 2002), pp. 120–28.
51. Frank R. Kardes, Gurumurthy Kalyanaram, Murali Chankdrashekar, and Ronald J. Dornoff, "Brand Retrieval, Consideration Set Composition, Consumer Choice, and the Pioneering Advantage," *Journal of Consumer Research* 20 (June 1993), pp. 62–75. See also, Frank H. Alpert and Michael A. Kamins, "Pioneer Brand Advantage and Consumer Behavior: A Conceptual Framework and Propositional Inventory," *Journal of the Academy of Marketing Science* 22 (June 1994), pp. 244–53.
52. Kurt A. Carlson, Margaret G. Meloy, and J. Edward Russo, "Leader-Driven Primacy: Using Attribute Order to Affect Consumer Choice," *Journal of Consumer Research* 32 (March 2006), pp. 513–18.
53. Thomas S. Robertson and Hubert Gatignon, "How Innovators Thwart New Entrants into Their Market," *Planning Review*, September–October 1991, pp. 4–11, 48; Douglas Bowman and Hubert Gatignon, "Order of Entry as a Moderator of the Effect of Marketing Mix on Market Share," *Marketing Science* 15 (Summer 1996), pp. 222–42.
54. Venkatesh Shankar, Gregory S. Carpenter, and Lakshman Krishnamurthi, "Late Mover Advantage: How Innovative Late Entrants Outsell Pioneers," *Journal of Marketing Research* 35 (February 1998), pp. 54–70.
55. Steven P. Schnaars, *Managing Imitation Strategies* (New York: Free Press, 1994). See also, Jin K. Han, Namwoon Kim, and Hony-Bom Kin, "Entry Barriers: A Dull-, One-, or Two-Edged Sword for Incumbents? Unraveling the

- Paradox from a Contingency Perspective,” *Journal of Marketing* 65 (January 2001), pp. 1–14.
56. Victor Kegan, “Second Sight: Second Movers Take All,” *The Guardian*, October 10, 2002.
 57. Peter N. Golder, “Historical Method in Marketing Research with New Evidence on Long-term Market Share Stability,” *Journal of Marketing Research* 37 (May 2000), pp. 156–72; Peter N. Golder and Gerald J. Tellis, “Pioneer Advantage: Marketing Logic or Marketing Legend?” *Journal of Marketing Research* 30 (May 1993), pp. 34–46. See also, Shi Zhang and Arthur B. Markman, “Overcoming the Early Advantage: The Role of Alignable and Nonalignable Differences,” *Journal of Marketing Research* 35 (November 1998), pp. 1–15.
 58. Gerald Tellis and Peter Golder, *Will and Vision: How Latecomers Can Grow to Dominate Markets* (New York: McGraw-Hill, 2001); Rajesh K. Chandy and Gerald J. Tellis, “The Incumbent’s Curse? Incumbency, Size, and Radical Product Innovation,” *Journal of Marketing Research* 64 (July 2000), pp. 1–17.
 59. Sungwook Min, Manohar U. Kalwani, and William T. Robinson, “Market Pioneer and Early Follower Survival Risks: A Contingency Analysis of Really New Versus Incrementally New Product-Markets,” *Journal of Marketing* 70 (January 2006), pp. 15–35. See also Raji Srinivasan, Gary L. Lilien, and Arvind Rangaswamy, “First In, First Out? The Effects of Network Externalities on Pioneer Survival,” *Journal of Marketing* 68 (January 2004), pp. 41–58.
 60. Trond Riiber Knudsen, “Escaping the Middle-Market Trap: An Interview with CEO of Electrolux,” *McKinsey Quarterly* (December 2006), pp. 72–79.
 61. Rajan Varadarajan, Mark P. DeFanti, and Paul S. Busch, “Brand Portfolio, Corporate Image, and Reputation: Managing Brand Deletions,” *Journal of the Academy of Marketing Science* 34 (Spring 2006), pp. 195–205; Stephen J. Carlotti Jr., Mary Ellen Coe, and Jesko Perrey, “Making Brand Portfolios Work,” *McKinsey Quarterly* 4 (2004), pp. 24–36; Nirmalya Kumar, “Kill a Brand, Keep a Customer,” *Harvard Business Review*, December 2003, pp. 86–95; George J. Avlonitis, “Product Elimination Decision Making: Does Formality Matter?” *Journal of Marketing* 49 (Winter 1985), pp. 41–52; Philip Kotler, “Phasing Out Weak Products,” *Harvard Business Review*, March–April 1965, pp. 107–18.
 62. Kathryn Rudie Harrigan, “The Effect of Exit Barriers upon Strategic Flexibility,” *Strategic Management Journal* 1 (February 1980), pp. 165–76.
 63. Laurence P. Feldman and Albert L. Page, “Harvesting: The Misunderstood Market Exit Strategy,” *Journal of Business Strategy* (Spring 1985), pp. 79–85; Philip Kotler, “Harvesting Strategies for Weak Products,” *Business Horizons*, August 1978, pp. 15–22.
 64. Rob Walker, “Can Ghost Brands . . .,” *International Herald Tribune*, May 17–18, 2008, pp. 17–18; Peter Carbona, “The Rush to Grab Orphan Brands,” *BusinessWeek*, August 3, 2009, pp. 47–48.
 65. Stuart Elliott, “Those Shelved Brands Start to Look Tempting,” *New York Times*, August 21, 2008.
 66. Peter N. Golder and Gerard J. Tellis, “Growing, Growing, Gone: Cascades, Diffusion, and Turning Points in the Product Life Cycle,” *Marketing Science* 23 (Spring 2004), pp. 207–18.
 67. Youngme Moon, “Break Free from the Product Life Cycle,” *Harvard Business Review*, May 2005, pp. 87–94.
 68. Hubert Gatignon and David Soberman, “Competitive Response and Market Evolution,” Barton A. Weitz and Robin Wensley, eds., *Handbook of Marketing* (London, UK: Sage Publications, 2002), pp. 126–47; Robert D. Buzzell, “Market Functions and Market Evolution,” *Journal of Marketing* 63 (Special Issue 1999), pp. 61–63.
 69. Raji Srinivasan, Arvind Rangaswamy, and Gary L. Lilien, “Turning Adversity into Advantage: Does Proactive Marketing During Recession Pay Off?” *International Journal of Research in Marketing* 22 (June 2005), pp. 109–25.
 70. Jon Fine, “Why General Mills Marketing Pays Off,” *BusinessWeek*, July 27, 2009, pp. 67–68; Matthew Boyle, “Snap, Crackle, Pop at the Food Giants,” *BusinessWeek*, October 6, 2008, p. 48.
 71. Philip Lay, Todd Hewlin, and Geoffrey Moore, “In a Downturn, Provoke Your Customers,” *Harvard Business Review*, March 2009, pp. 48–56.
 72. John A. Quelch and Katherine E. Jocz, “How to Market in a Downturn,” *Harvard Business Review*, April 2009, pp. 52–62.
 73. Maria Bartiromo, “Facetime: Inside a Company Resetting for Recovery,” *BusinessWeek*, July 13 and 20, 2009, pp. 15–17.
 74. Steve Hamm, “The New Age of Frugality,” *BusinessWeek*, October 20, 2008, pp. 55–58.
 75. Jane Porter and Burt Heim, “Doing Whatever Gets Them in the Door,” *BusinessWeek*, June 30, 2008, p. 60.
 76. Ibid.
 77. David Taylor, David Nichols, Diego Kerner, and Anne Charbonneau, “Leading Brands Out of the Recession,” *Brandgym Research Paper 2*, www.brandgym.com, September 2009.
 78. Todd Wasserman, “Maverick CMOs Try Going without TV,” *Brandweek*, January 24, 2009.
 79. Maureen Scarpelli, “Dentists Step Up Marketing Efforts as Patients Scrimp by Skipping Visits,” *Wall Street Journal*, August 11, 2009.
 80. Peter J. Williamson and Ming Zeng, “Value for Money Strategies for Recessionary Times,” *Harvard Business Review*, March 2009, pp. 66–74.
 81. Burt Heim, “How to Sell Luxury to Penny-Pinchers,” *BusinessWeek*, November 10, 2008, p. 60.
 82. Stuart Elliott, “Trying to Pitch Products to the Savers,” *New York Times*, June 3, 2009.
 83. Andrew Martin, “In Tough Times, Spam Is Suddenly Appealing,” *Boston Globe*, November 16, 2008.

Chapter 12

1. John Frank, "Beep! Beep! Coming Through," *Marketing News*, September 30, 2009, pp. 12-14; David Kiley, "Ford's Savior?" *BusinessWeek*, March 16, 2009, pp. 31-34; Alex Taylor III, "Fixing Up Ford," *Fortune*, May 25, 2009, pp. 45-50; David Kiley, "One Ford for the Whole Wide World," *BusinessWeek*, June 15, 2009, pp. 58-59; "Ford's European Arm Lends a Hand," *Economist*, March 8, 2008, pp. 72-73.
2. This discussion is adapted from a classic article: Theodore Levitt, "Marketing Success through Differentiation: Of Anything," *Harvard Business Review*, January-February 1980, pp. 83-91. The first level, core benefit, has been added to Levitt's discussion.
3. Harper W. Boyd Jr. and Sidney Levy, "New Dimensions in Consumer Analysis," *Harvard Business Review*, November-December 1963, pp. 129-40.
4. Jim Curley, "Niagara Sheet Feeder in Full Production," *The White Sheet: Board Converting News*, August 25, 2008; Jackie Schultz, "A Sheet Plant's Lean Journey," *Corrugated Today*, January-February 2005, pp. 42-47; Joe Iannarelli, "Jamestown Container Thinks Outside the Box," *Business First*, October 3, 2003, p. 4.
5. For some definitions, see Peter D. Bennett, ed., *Dictionary of Marketing Terms* (Chicago: American Marketing Association, 1995). Also see, Patrick E. Murphy and Ben M. Enis, "Classifying Products Strategically," *Journal of Marketing* 50 (July 1986), pp. 24-42.
6. Some of these bases are discussed in David A. Garvin, "Competing on the Eight Dimensions of Quality," *Harvard Business Review*, November-December 1987, pp. 101-9.
7. Marco Bertini, Elie Ofek, and Dan Ariely, "The Impact of Add-On Features on Product Evaluations," *Journal of Consumer Research* 36 (June 2009), pp. 17-28; Tripat Gill, "Convergent Products: What Functionalities Add More Value to the Base," *Journal of Marketing* 72 (March 2008), pp. 46-62; Robert J. Meyer, Sheghui Zhao, and Jin K. Han, "Biases in Valuation vs. Usage of Innovative Product Features," *Marketing Science* 27 (November-December 2008), pp. 1083-96.
8. Paul Kedrosky, "Simple Minds," *Business 2.0*, April 2006, p. 38; Debora Viana Thompson, Rebecca W. Hamilton, and Roland Rust, "Feature Fatigue: When Product Capabilities Become Too Much of a Good Thing," *Journal of Marketing Research* 42 (November 2005), pp. 431-42.
9. James H. Gilmore and B. Joseph Pine, *Markets of One: Creating Customer-Unique Value through Mass Customization*, (Boston: Harvard Business School Press, 2000).
10. Nikolaus Franke, Peter Keinz, Christoph J. Steger, "Testing the Value of Customization: When Do Customers Really Prefer Products Tailored to Their Preferences," *Journal of Marketing* 73 (September 2009), pp. 103-21.
11. Gail Edmondson, "Mercedes Gets Back up to Speed," *BusinessWeek*, November 13, 2006, pp. 46-47; Peter Gumble, "How Dr. Z Plans to Fix Mercedes," *CNNMoney.com*. <http://money.cnn.com>, July 13, 2009; Chris Shunk, "Paradox: As Quality Improves, Mercedes-Benz Dealership Profits Decline," *Automotive News*, January 27, 2009.
12. Bernd Schmitt and Alex Simonson, *Marketing Aesthetics: The Strategic Management of Brand, Identity, and Image* (New York: Free Press, 1997).
13. Stanley Reed, "Rolls-Royce at Your Service," *BusinessWeek*, November 15, 2005, pp. 92-93; *Rolls-Royce*, www.rolls-royce.com/civil/services/totalcare; "Rolls-Royce Secures USD 4.1 Billion Worth Orders During Paris Air Show," *India Defence*, www.india-defence.com, June 20, 2009; "Rolls-Royce Engine Support," *Aviation Today*, June 1, 2006.
14. For a comprehensive discussion of Cemex, see Adrian J. Slywotzky and David J. Morrison, "Digital Innovator: Cemex," *How Digital Is Your Business* (New York: Crown Business, 2000), pp. 78-100; see also Mohanbir Sawhney, Robert C. Wolcott, and Inigo Arroniz, "The 12 Different Ways for Companies to Innovate," *MIT Sloan Management Review* (April 1, 2006).
15. Cliff Edwards, "Why Tech Bows to Best Buy," *BusinessWeek*, December 10, 2009; Jena McGregor, "At Best Buy, Marketing Goes Micro," *BusinessWeek*, May 15, 2008; Matthew Boyle, "Best Buy's Giant Gamble," *Fortune*, April 3, 2006, pp. 69-75; Geoffrey Colvin, "Talking Shop," *Fortune*, August 21, 2006, pp. 73-80; "Best Buy Turns on the Geek Appeal," *DSN Retailing Today*, February 24, 2003, p. 22.
16. This section is based on a comprehensive treatment of product returns: James Stock, Thomas Speh, and Herbert Shear, "Managing Product Returns for Competitive Advantage," *MIT Sloan Management Review* (Fall 2006), pp. 57-62. See also, J. Andrew Petersen and V. Kumar, "Can Product Returns Make You Money?" *MIT Sloan Management Review* (Spring 2010), pp. 85-89.
17. Dave Blanchard, "Moving Forward in Reverse," *Logistics Today*, July 12, 2005; Kelly Shermach, "Taming CRM in the Retail Sector," *CRM Buyer*, October 12, 2006; www.epinions.com, June 28, 2010.
18. Bruce Nussbaum, "The Power of Design," *BusinessWeek*, May 17, 2004, pp. 88-94; "Masters of Design," *Fast Company*, June 2004, pp. 61-75; Also see, Philip Kotler, "Design: A Powerful but Neglected Strategic Tool," *Journal of Business Strategy* (Fall 1984), pp. 16-21.
19. Ravindra Chitturi, Rajagopal Raghunathan and Vijay Mahajan, "Delight by Design: The Role of Hedonic Versus Utilitarian Benefits," *Journal of Marketing* 72 (May 2008), pp. 48-63.
20. Ulrich R. Orth and Keven Malkewitz, "Holistic Package Design and Consumer Brand Impressions," *Journal of Marketing* 72 (May 2008), pp. 64-81; Mark Borden, "Less Hulk, More Bruce Lee," *Fast Company*, April 2007, pp. 86-91.

21. Steve Hamm and Jay Greene, "That Computer Is So You," *BusinessWeek*, January 14, 2008, pp. 24–26; Damon Darlin, "Design Helps H.P. Profit More on PCs," *New York Times*, May 17, 2007.
22. "IDEA Design Gallery," www.isda.org, May 14, 2010; "Design Winners: The List," *BusinessWeek*, July 22, 2009; David Carnoy, "The 20 Most Innovative Products of the Decade," *CNET Reviews*, December 10, 2009; Emily Lambert, "Splash," *Forbes*, July 23, 2007, pp. 66–68.
23. Virginia Postrel, *The Substance of Style: How the Rise of Aesthetic Value Is Remaking Commerce, Culture, and Consciousness* (New York: HarperCollins, 2003).
24. Linda Tischler, "Pop Artist David Butler," *Fast Company*, October 2009, pp. 91–97; Jessie Scanlon, "Coca-Cola's New Design Direction," *BusinessWeek*, August 25, 2008.
25. Todd Wasserman, "Thinking by Design," *Brandweek*, November 3, 2008, pp. 18–21.
26. Jay Green, "Where Designers Rule," *BusinessWeek*, November 5, 2007, pp. 46–51; Deborah Steinborn, "Talking About Design," *Wall Street Journal*, June 23, 2008, p. R6.
27. In reality, Tide's product line is actually deeper and more complex. There are 9 powder products, 16 liquid products, 1 Stain Release product, 1 Tide to Go product, 1 Tide Washing Machine Cleaner, and 9 Tide accessories.
28. A Yesim Orhun, "Optimal Product Line Design When Consumers Exhibit Choice Set-Dependent Preferences," *Marketing Science* 28 (September–October 2009), pp. 868–86; Robert Bordley, "Determining the Appropriate Depth and Breadth of a Firm's Product Portfolio," *Journal of Marketing Research* 40 (February 2003), pp. 39–53; Peter Boatwright and Joseph C. Nunes, "Reducing Assortment: An Attribute-Based Approach," *Journal of Marketing* 65 (July 2001), pp. 50–63.
29. Adapted from a Hamilton Consultants White Paper, December 1, 2000.
30. This illustration is found in Benson P. Shapiro, *Industrial Product Policy: Managing the Existing Product Line* (Cambridge, MA: Marketing Science Institute, 1977), pp. 3–5, 98–101.
31. Amna Kirmani, Sanjay Sood, and Sheri Bridges, "The Ownership Effect in Consumer Responses to Brand-Line Stretches," *Journal of Marketing* 63 (January 1999), pp. 88–101; T. Randall, K. Ulrich, and D. Reibstein, "Brand Equity and Vertical Product-Line Extent," *Marketing Science* 17 (Fall 1998), pp. 356–79; David A. Aaker, "Should You Take Your Brand to Where the Action Is?" *Harvard Business Review*, September–October 1997, pp. 135–43.
32. Michael Carolan, "InterContinental Hotels Sales Up After 18 Months of Falls," *Wall Street Journal*, May 11, 2010; Barbara De Lollis, "Holiday Inn Chain Upgrades With Style," *USA TODAY*, June 24, 2008; Bob Garfield, "What Makes This Commercial Great? The Bacon Bit Says It All," *Advertising Age*, February 25, 2008.
33. Alex Taylor III, "Bavaria's Next Top Model," *Fortune*, March 30, 2009, pp. 100–3; Neal E. Boudette, "BMW's Push to Broaden Line Hits Some Bumps in the Road," *Wall Street Journal*, January 25, 2005; Alex Taylor III, "The Ultimate Fairly Inexpensive Driving Machine," *Fortune*, November 1, 2004, pp. 130–40.
34. Steuart Henderson Britt, "How Weber's Law Can Be Applied to Marketing," *Business Horizons*, February 1975, pp. 21–29.
35. Brett R. Gordon, "A Dynamic Model of Consumer Replacement Cycles in the PC Processor Industry," *Marketing Science* 28 (September–October 2009), pp. 846–67; Raghunath Singh Rao, Om Narasimhan, and George John, "Understanding the Role of Trade-Ins in Durable Goods Markets: Theory and Evidence," *Marketing Science* 28 (September–October 2009), pp. 950–67.
36. Stanley Holmes, "All the Rage Since Reagan," *BusinessWeek*, July 25, 2005, p. 68.
37. Nirmalya Kumar, "Kill a Brand, Keep a Customer," *Harvard Business Review*, December 2003, pp. 86–95; Brad Stone, "Back to Basics," *Newsweek*, August 4, 2003, pp. 42–44; Sarah Skidmore, "Designers, Makers Tune In to Collectors for New Trends," *Associated Press*, January 21, 2007.
38. Laurens M. Sloot, Dennis Fok, and Peter Verhoef, "The Short- and Long-Term Impact of an Assortment Reduction on Category Sales," *Journal of Marketing Research* 43 (November 2006), pp. 536–48.
39. Patricia O'Connell, "A Chat with Unilever's Niall FitzGerald," *BusinessWeek*, www.businessweek.com, August 2, 2001; John Willman, "Leaner, Cleaner, and Healthier Is the Stated Aim," *Financial Times*, February 23, 2000; "Unilever's Goal: 'Power Brands'," *Advertising Age*, January 3, 2000.
40. "Volkswagen Brand Turnaround Drives Q1 Group Profits," *Reuters*, April 29, 2010; Andreas Cremer, "VW in 'Last Attempt' to Save Seat Amid Spanish Crisis," *Bloomberg BusinessWeek*, www.businessweek.com, May 14, 2010; George Rädler, Jan Kubes, and Bohdan Wojnar, "Skoda Auto: From 'No-Class' to World-Class in One Decade," *Critical EYE* 15 (July 2006); Scott D. Upham, "Beneath the Brand," *Automotive Manufacturing & Production*, June 2001.
41. Eric T. Anderson and Duncan I. Simester, "Does Demand Fall When Customers Perceive That Prices Are Unfair? The Case of Premium Pricing for Large Sizes," *Marketing Science* 27 (May–June 2008), pp. 492–500.
42. Ricard Gil and Wesley R. Hartmann, "Empirical Analysis of Metering Price Discrimination: Evidence from Concession Sales at Movie Theaters," *Marketing Science* 28 (November–December 2009), pp. 1046–62.
43. Connie Guglielmo, "Hewlett-Packard Says Printer Business is 'Healthy,'" *Bloomberg News*, December 22, 2009; "HP Annual Report 2008," HP, www.hp.com/hpinfo/investor/; Ben Elgin, "Can HP's Printer Biz Keep Printing Money?" *BusinessWeek*, July 14, 2003, pp. 68–70; Simon Avery, "H-P Sees

- Room for Growth in Printer Market," *Wall Street Journal*, June 28, 2001.
44. Dilip Soman and John T. Gourville, "Transaction Decoupling: How Price Bundling Affects the Decision to Consume," *Journal of Marketing Research* 38 (February 2001), pp. 30–44; Ramanathan Subramaniam and R. Venkatesh, "Optimal Bundling Strategies in Multiobject Auctions of Complements or Substitutes," *Marketing Science* 28 (March–April 2009), pp. 264–73.
 45. Anita Elberse, Bye-Bye Bundles: The Unbundling of Music in Digital Channels," *Journal of Marketing* 74 (May 2010), pp. 107–23.
 46. Akshay R. Rao, Lu Qu, and Robert W. Ruekert, "Signaling Unobservable Quality through a Brand Ally," *Journal of Marketing Research* 36 (May 1999), pp. 258–68; Akshay R. Rao and Robert W. Ruekert, "Brand Alliances as Signals of Product Quality," *Sloan Management Review* (Fall 1994), pp. 87–97.
 47. Bernard L. Simonin and Julie A. Ruth, "Is a Company Known by the Company It Keeps? Assessing the Spillover Effects of Brand Alliances on Consumer Brand Attitudes," *Journal of Marketing Research* 35 (February 1998), pp. 30–42; see also, C. W. Park, S. Y. Jun, and A. D. Shocker, "Composite Branding Alliances: An Investigation of Extension and Feedback Effects," *Journal of Marketing Research* 33 (November 1996), pp. 453–66.
 48. Tansav Geylani, J. Jeffrey Inman, and Frenkel Ter Hofstede, "Image Reinforcement or Impairment: The Effects of Co-Branding on Attribute Uncertainty," *Marketing Science* 27 (July–August 2008), pp. 730–44; Ed Lebar, Phil Buehler, Kevin Lane Keller, Monika Sawicka, Zeynep Aksehirli, and Keith Richey, "Brand Equity Implications of Joint Branding Programs," *Journal of Advertising Research* 45 (December 2005).
 49. C. W. Park, S. Y. Jun, and A. D. Shocker, "Composite Branding Alliances: An Investigation of Extension and Feedback Effects," *Journal of Marketing Research* 33 (November 1996), pp. 453–66.; Lance Leuthesser, Chiranjier Kohli, and Rajneesh Suri, "2 + 2 = 5? A Framework for Using Co-Branding to Leverage a Brand," *Journal of Brand Management* 2 (September 2003), pp. 35–47.
 50. Based in part on a talk by Nancy Bailey, "Using Licensing to Build the Brand," Brand Masters Conference, December 7, 2000.
 51. Philip Kotler and Waldemar Pfoertsch, *Ingredient Branding: Making the Invisible Visible*, (Heidelberg, Germany: Springer-Verlag, 2011).
 52. Kalpesh Kaushik Desai and Kevin Lane Keller, "The Effects of Brand Expansions and Ingredient Branding Strategies on Host Brand Extendibility," *Journal of Marketing* 66 (January 2002), pp. 73–93; D. C. Denison, "Ingredient Branding Puts Big Names in the Mix," *Boston Globe*, May 26, 2002.
 53. Joe Tradii, "Ingredient Branding: Time to Check That Recipe Again," *Brandweek*, March 29, 2010, p. 44; Piet Levy, "B-to-B-to-C," *Marketing News*, September 30, 2009, pp. 15–20.
 54. "DuPont Receives Corporate Innovation Award," DuPont, www.dupont.com, November 13, 2009.
 55. Kevin Lane Keller, *Strategic Brand Management*, 3rd ed. (Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2008); Philip Kotler and Waldemar Pfoertsch, *B2B Brand Management* (New York: Springer, 2006); Paul F. Nunes, Stephen F. Dull, and Patrick D. Lynch, "When Two Brands Are Better Than One," *Outlook*, January 2003, pp. 14–23.
 56. Fred Richards, "Memo to CMOs: It's The Packaging, Stupid," *Brandweek*, August 17, 2009, p. 22.
 57. Susan B. Bassin, "Value-Added Packaging Cuts through Store Clutter," *Marketing News*, September 26, 1988, p. 21. Reprinted with permission from *Marketing News*, published by the American Marketing Association.
 58. Stuart Elliott, "Tropicana Discovers Some Buyers Are Passionate About Packaging," *New York Times*, February 23, 2009; Linda Tischler, "Never Mind! Pepsi Pulls Much-Loathed Tropicana Packaging," *Fast Company*, February 23, 2009; Natalie Zmuda, "Tropicana Line's Sales Plunge 20% Post-Rebranding," *Advertising Age*, April 2, 2009; Kenneth Hein, "Tropicana Squeezes Out Fresh Design with a Peel," *Brandweek*, January 19, 2009, p. 30.
 59. Mya Frazier, "How Can Your Package Stand Out? Eye Tracking Looks Hard for Answers," *Advertising Age*, October 16, 2006, p. 14.
 60. Kate Fitzgerald, "Packaging Is the Capper," *Advertising Age*, May 5, 2003, p. 22.
 61. John C. Kozup, Elizabeth H. Creyer, and Scot Burton, "Making Healthful Food Choices: The Influence of Health Claims and Nutrition Information on Consumers' Evaluations of Packaged Food Products and Restaurant Menu Items," *Journal of Marketing* 67 (April 2003), pp. 19–34; Siva K. Balasubramanian and Catherine Cole, "Consumers' Search and Use of Nutrition Information: The Challenge and Promise of the Nutrition Labeling and Education Act," *Journal of Marketing* 66 (July 2002), pp. 112–27.
 62. Robert Berner, "Watch Out, Best Buy and Circuit City," *BusinessWeek*, November 21, 2005, pp. 46–48.
 63. Tao Chen, Ajay Kalra, and Baohung Sun, "Why Do Consumers Buy Extended Service Contracts," *Journal of Consumer Research* 36 (December 2009), pp. 611–23.
 64. Chris Serres, "More Electronics Buyers Skip Extended Warranties," *Minneapolis Star Tribune*, July 14, 2007. For an empirical study, see Junhong Chu and Pradeep K. Chintagunta, "Quantifying the Economic Value of Warranties in the U.S. Server Market," *Marketing Science* 28 (January–February 2009), pp. 99–121.
 65. Barbara Ettore, "Phenomenal Promises Mean Business," *Management Review* (March 1994), pp. 18–23; "More Firms Pledge Guaranteed Service," *Wall Street Journal*, July 17, 1991; also see, Sridhar Moorthy and Kannan Srinivasan, "Signaling Quality with a Money-Back Guarantee: The Role of Transaction Costs," *Marketing Science* 14 (Fall 1995), pp. 442–46; Christopher W. L. Hart, *Extraordinary Guarantees* (New York: AMACOM, 1993).

Chapter 13

1. Leonard L. Berry, *On Great Service: A Framework for Action* (New York: Free Press, 2006); Leonard L. Berry, *Discovering the Soul of Service: The Nine Drivers of Sustainable Business Success* (New York: Free Press, 1999); Fred Wiersema, ed., *Customer Service: Extraordinary Results at Southwest Airlines, Charles Schwab, Lands' End, American Express, Staples, and USAA* (New York: HarperBusiness, 1998).
2. Matt Krantz, "Tinseltown Gets Glitzy New Star," *USA TODAY*, August 24, 2009; Linda Tischler, "Join the Circus," *Fast Company*, July 2005, 53–58; "Cirque du Soleil," *America's Greatest Brands* 3 (2004); Geoff Keighley, "The Factory," *Business 2.0*, February 2004, p. 102; Robin D. Rusch, "Cirque du Soleil Phantasmagoria Consorts," *Brandchannel.com*, (December 1, 2003).
3. *United States Department of Labor, Bureau of Labor Statistics*. www.bls.gov/emp/home.htm.
4. Benjamin Scheider and David E. Bowen, *Winning the Service Game* (Boston: Harvard Business School Press, 1995); Leonard L. Berry, "Services Marketing Is Different," *Business*, May–June 1980, pp. 24–30. For a thorough review of academic research into services, see Roland T. Rust and Tuck Siang Chung, "Marketing Models of Service and Relationships," *Marketing Science* 25 (November–December 2006), pp. 560–80.
5. Paul Keegan, "The Best New Idea in Business," *Fortune*, September 14, 2009, pp. 42–52; Adam Ashton, "Growth Galore but Profits Are Zip," *BusinessWeek*, September 8, 2008, p. 62; Alex Frankel, "Zipcar Makes the Leap," *Fast Company*, March 2008, pp. 48–50; Mike Beirne, "Temporary Plates," *Brandweek*, July 9, 2007, pp. 30–34.
6. Further classifications of services are described in Christopher H. Lovelock, *Services Marketing*, 3rd ed. (Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 1996). Also see John E. Bateson, *Managing Services Marketing: Text and Readings*, 3rd ed. (Hinsdale, IL: Dryden, 1995).
7. Valarie A. Zeithaml, "How Consumer Evaluation Processes Differ between Goods and Services," J. Donnelly and W. R. George, eds., *Marketing of Services* (Chicago: American Marketing Association, 1981), pp. 186–90.
8. Amy Ostrom and Dawn Iacobucci, "Consumer Trade-Offs and the Evaluation of Services," *Journal of Marketing* 59 (January 1995), pp. 17–28.
9. For discussion of how the blurring of the line distinguishing products and services changes the meaning of this taxonomy, see Christopher Lovelock and Evert Gummesson, "Whither Services Marketing? In Search of a New Paradigm and Fresh Perspectives," *Journal of Service Research* 7 (August 2004), pp. 20–41; and Stephen L. Vargo and Robert F. Lusch, "Evolving to a New Dominant Logic for Marketing," *Journal of Marketing* 68 (January 2004), pp. 1–17.
10. Theodore Levitt, "Marketing Intangible Products and Product Intangibles," *Harvard Business Review*, May–June 1981, pp. 94–102; Leonard L. Berry, "Services Marketing Is Different," *Business*, May–June, 1980, pp. 24–29.
11. B. H. Booms and M. J. Bitner, "Marketing Strategies and Organizational Structures for Service Firms," J. Donnelly and W. R. George, eds., *Marketing of Services* (Chicago: American Marketing Association, 1981), pp. 47–51.
12. Lewis P. Carbone and Stephan H. Haeckel, "Engineering Customer Experiences," *Marketing Management* 3 (Winter 1994), p. 17.
13. Bernd H. Schmitt, *Customer Experience Management* (New York: John Wiley & Sons, 2003); Bernd H. Schmitt, David L. Rogers, and Karen Vrotsos (2003), *There's No Business That's Not Show Business: Marketing in an Experience Culture* (Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall Financial Times, 2004).
14. Chip Heath and Dan Heath, "Give 'Em Something to Talk About," *Fast Company*, June 2007, pp. 58–59.
15. For some emerging research results on the effects of creating time and place service separation, see Hean Tat Keh and Jun Pang, "Customer Reaction to Service Separation," *Journal of Marketing* 74 (March 2010), pp. 55–70.
16. Gila E. Fruchter and Eitan Gerstner, "Selling with 'Satisfaction Guaranteed,'" *Journal of Service Research* 1 (May 1999), pp. 313–23. See also, Rebecca J. Slotegraaf and J. Jeffrey Inman, "Longitudinal Shifts in the Drivers of Satisfaction with Product Quality: The Role of Attribute Resolvability," *Journal of Marketing Research* 41 (August 2004), pp. 269–80.
17. For a similar list, see Leonard L. Berry and A. Parasuraman, *Marketing Services: Competing through Quality* (New York: Free Press, 1991), p. 16.
18. G. Pascal Zachary and Dick Kovacevich, "Bank Different," *Business 2.0*, June 2006, pp. 101–3; Greg Farrell, "Banking on Success as a One-Stop Shop," *USA Today*, March 26, 2007.
19. The material in this paragraph is based in part on Valarie Zeithaml, Mary Jo Bitner, and Dwayne D. Gremler, "Service Development and Design," *Services Marketing: Integrating Customer Focus across the Firm*, 4th ed. (New York: McGraw-Hill, 2006), Chapter 9.
20. G. Lynn Shostack, "Service Positioning through Structural Change," *Journal of Marketing* 51 (January 1987), pp. 34–43.
21. Vikas Mittal, Wagner A. Kamakura, and Rahul Govind, "Geographical Patterns in Customer Service and Satisfaction: An Empirical Investigation," *Journal of Marketing* 68 (July 2004), pp. 48–62.
22. Jeffrey F. Rayport, Bernard J. Jaworski, and Ellie J. Kyung, "Best Face Forward: Improving Companies' Service Interface with Customers," *Journal of Interactive Marketing* 19 (Autumn 2005), pp. 67–80; Asim Ansari and Carl F. Mela, "E-Customization," *Journal of Marketing Research* 40 (May 2003), pp. 131–45.

23. W. Earl Sasser, "Match Supply and Demand in Service Industries," *Harvard Business Review*, November–December 1976, pp. 133–40.
24. Steven M. Shugan and Jinhong Xie, "Advance Selling for Services," *California Management Review* 46 (Spring 2004), pp. 37–54; Eyal Biyalogorsky and Eitan Gerstner, "Contingent Pricing to Reduce Price Risks," *Marketing Science* 23 (Winter 2004), pp. 146–55; Steven M. Shugan and Jinhong Xie, "Advance Pricing of Services and Other Implications of Separating Purchase and Consumption," *Journal of Service Research* 2 (February 2000), pp. 227–39.
25. Seth Godin, "If It's Broke, Fix It," *Fast Company*, October 2003, p. 131.
26. James Wallace, "Singapore Airlines Raises the Bar for Luxury Flying," *Seattle Post Intelligencer*, January 18, 2007; Justin Doebele, "The Engineer," *Forbes*, January 9, 2006, pp. 122–24; Stanley Holmes, "Creature Comforts at 30,000 Feet," *BusinessWeek*, December 18, 2006, p. 138; Anonymous, "What Makes Singapore a Service Champion?" *Strategic Direction*, April 2003, pp. 26–28; www.singaporeaire.com.
27. Diane Brady, "Why Service Stinks," *BusinessWeek*, October 23, 2000, pp. 119–28.
28. Mary Clingman, "Turkey Talker," *Fortune*, November 27, 2006, p. 70.
29. Elisabeth Sullivan, "Happy Endings Lead to Happy Returns," *Marketing News*, October 30, 2009, p. 20.
30. Dan Reed, "United Makeover Aims to Refresh and Renew," *USA Today*, September 17, 2009, pp. 1B–2B; Elisabeth Sullivan, "Happy Endings Lead to Happy Returns," *Marketing News*, October 30, 2009, p. 20.
31. Nikki Hopewell, "Moyer Is Committed to Delivering a Comcast Experience," *Marketing News*, October 15, 2008, pp. 28–30; Hannah Clark, "Customer Service Hell," *Forbes*, March 30, 2006.
32. David Lazarus, "JetBlue Response Praised," *San Francisco Chronicle*, February 25, 2007, B1; Marc Gunther, "Nothing Blue About This Airline," *Fortune*, September 14, 2009, pp. 114–18.
33. Stephen S. Tax, Mark Colgate, and David Bowen, "How to Prevent Your Customers from Failing," *MIT Sloan Management Review* (Spring 2006), pp. 30–38; Mei Xue and Patrick T. Harker, "Customer Efficiency: Concept and Its Impact on E-Business Management," *Journal of Service Research* 4 (May 2002), pp. 253–67; Matthew L. Meuter, Amy L. Ostrom, Robert I. Roundtree, and Mary Jo Bitner, "Self-Service Technologies: Understanding Customer Satisfaction with Technology-Based Service Encounters," *Journal of Marketing* 64 (July 2000), pp. 50–64.
34. Kimmy Wa Chan, Chi Kin (Bennett) Yim, and Simon S. K. Lam, "Is Customer Participation in Value Creation a Double-Edged Sword? Evidence from Professional Financial Services Across Cultures," *Journal of Marketing* 74 (May 2010), pp. 48–64.
35. Valarie Zeithaml, Mary Jo Bitner, and Dwayne D. Gremler, *Services Marketing: Integrating Customer Focus across the Firm*, 4th ed. (New York: McGraw-Hill, 2006).
36. Stephen S. Tax, Mark Colgate, and David Bowen, "How to Prevent Your Customers from Failing," *MIT Sloan Management Review* (Spring 2006), pp. 30–38; Michael Sanserino and Cari Tuna, "Companies Strive Harder to Please Customers," *Wall Street Journal*, July 27, 2009, p. B4.
37. James L. Heskett, W. Earl Sasser Jr., and Joe Wheeler, *Ownership Quotient: Putting the Service Profit Chain to Work for Unbeatable Competitive Advantage* (Boston, MA: Harvard Business School Press, 2008).
38. D. Todd Donovan, Tom J. Brown, and John C. Mowen, "Internal Benefits of Service Worker Customer Orientation: Job Satisfaction, Commitment, and Organizational Citizenship Behaviors," *Journal of Marketing* 68 (January 2004), pp. 128–46.
39. Dan Heath and Chip Heath, "I Love You. Now What?" *Fast Company*, October 2008, pp. 95–96.
40. Evan Hessel, "Kung Pao Chicken for the Soul," *Forbes*, April 21, 2008, pp. 106–107.
41. Frances X. Frei, "The Four Things a Service Business Must Get Right," *Harvard Business Review*, April 2008, pp. 70–80.
42. Christian Gronroos, "A Service-Quality Model and Its Marketing Implications," *European Journal of Marketing* 18 (1984), pp. 36–44.
43. Leonard Berry, "Big Ideas in Services Marketing," *Journal of Consumer Marketing* (Spring 1986), pp. 47–51. See also, Jagdip Singh, "Performance Productivity and Quality of Frontline Employees in Service Organizations," *Journal of Marketing* 64 (April 2000), pp. 15–34; Detelina Marinova, Jun Ye, and Jagdip Singh, "Do Frontline Mechanisms Matter? Impact of Quality and Productivity Orientations on Unit Revenue, Efficiency, and Customer Satisfaction," *Journal of Marketing* 72 (March 2008), pp. 28–45; John R. Hauser, Duncan I. Simester, and Birger Wernerfelt, "Internal Customers and Internal Suppliers," *Journal of Marketing Research* 33 (August 1996), pp. 268–80; Walter E. Greene, Gary D. Walls, and Larry J. Schrest, "Internal Marketing: The Key to External Marketing Success," *Journal of Services Marketing* 8 (1994), pp. 5–13.
44. Christian Gronroos, "A Service-Quality Model and Its Marketing Implications," *European Journal of Marketing* 18 (1984), pp. 36–44; Michael D. Hartline, James G. Maxham III, and Daryl O. McKee, "Corridors of Influence in the Dissemination of Customer-Oriented Strategy to Customer-Contact Service Employees," *Journal of Marketing* 64 (April 2000), pp. 35–50.
45. John Batelle, "Charles Schwab, Back from the Brink," *Business 2.0*, March 2006; "Q&A with Becky Saeger, CMO, Charles Schwab," *ANA Marketing Musings*, September 11, 2006; Betsy Morris, "Charles Schwab's

- Big Challenge,” *Fortune*, May 30, 2005; Rob Markey, Fred Reichheld, and Andreas Dullweber, “Closing the Customer Feedback Loop,” *Harvard Business Review*, December 2009, pp. 43–47.
46. Ad de Jong, Ko de Ruyter, and Jos Lemmink, “Antecedents and Consequences of the Service Climate in Boundary-Spanning Self-Managing Service Teams,” *Journal of Marketing* 68 (April 2004), pp. 18–35; Michael D. Hartline and O. C. Ferrell, “The Management of Customer-Contact Service Employees: An Empirical Investigation,” *Journal of Marketing* 60 (October 1996), pp. 52–70; Christian Homburg, Jan Wieseke, and Torsten Bornemann, “Implementing the Marketing Concept at the Employee-Customer Interface: The Role of Customer Need Knowledge,” *Journal of Marketing* 73 (July 2009), pp. 64–81; Chi Kin (Bennett) Yim, David K. Tse, and Kimmy Wa Chan, “Strengthening Customer Loyalty through Intimacy and Passion: Roles of Customer-Firm Affection and Customer-Staff Relationships,” *Journal of Marketing Research* 45 (December 2008), pp. 741–56.
 47. Michael Sanserino and Cari Tuna, “Companies Strive Harder to Please Customers,” *Wall Street Journal*, July 27, 2009, p. B4.
 48. Jena McGregor, “When Service Means Survival,” *BusinessWeek*, March 2, 2009, pp. 26–30.
 49. Heather Green, “How Amazon Aims to Keep You Clicking,” *BusinessWeek*, March 2, 2009, pp. 34–40.
 50. Roland T. Rust and Katherine N. Lemon, “E-Service and the Consumer,” *International Journal of Electronic Commerce* 5 (Spring 2001), pp. 83–99. See also, Balaji Padmanabhan and Alexander Tuzhilin, “On the Use of Optimization for Data Mining: Theoretical Interactions and ECRM opportunities,” *Management Science* 49 (October 2003), pp. 1327–43; B. P. S. Murthi and Sumit Sarkar, “The Role of the Management Sciences in Research on Personalization,” *Management Science* 49 (October 2003), pp. 1344–62.
 51. Roland T. Rust, P. K. Kannan, and Na Peng, “The Customer Economics of Internet Privacy,” *Journal of the Academy of Marketing Science* 30 (2002), pp. 455–64.
 52. Jena McGregor, “Customer Service Champs,” *BusinessWeek*, March 5, 2007, pp. 52–64.
 53. Jena McGregor, “When Service Means Survival,” *BusinessWeek*, March 2, 2009, pp. 26–30.
 54. John A. Martilla and John C. James, “Importance-Performance Analysis,” *Journal of Marketing* 41 (January 1977), pp. 77–79.
 55. Dave Dougherty and Ajay Murthy, “What Service Customers Really Want,” *Harvard Business Review*, September 2009, p. 22; for a contrarian point of view, see Edward Kasabov, “The Compliant Customer,” *MIT Sloan Management Review* (Spring 2010), pp. 18–19.
 56. Jeffrey G. Blodgett and Ronald D. Anderson, “A Bayesian Network Model of the Customer Complaint Process,” *Journal of Service Research* 2 (May 2000), pp. 321–38; Stephen S. Tax and Stephen W. Brown, “Recovering and Learning from Service Failures,” *Sloan Management Review* (Fall 1998), pp. 75–88; Claes Fornell and Birger Wernerfelt, “A Model for Customer Complaint Management,” *Marketing Science* 7 (Summer 1988), pp. 271–86.
 57. James G. Maxham III and Richard G. Netemeyer, “Firms Reap What They Sow: The Effects of Shared Values and Perceived Organizational Justice on Customers’ Evaluations of Complaint Handling,” *Journal of Marketing* 67 (January 2003), pp. 46–62; Jagdip Singh, “Performance Productivity and Quality of Frontline Employees in Service Organizations,” *Journal of Marketing* 64 (April 2000), pp. 15–34; Barry J. Rabin and James S. Boles, “Employee Behavior in a Service Environment: A Model and Test of Potential Differences between Men and Women,” *Journal of Marketing* 62 (April 1998), pp. 77–91.
 58. Stephen S. Tax, Stephen W. Brown and Murali Chandrashekar, “Customer Evaluations of Service Complaint Experiences: Implications for Relationship Marketing,” *Journal of Marketing* 62 (April 1998), pp. 60–76; Stephen S. Tax and Stephen W. Brown, “Recovering and Learning from Service Failures,” *Sloan Management Review* (Fall 1998), pp. 75–88.
 59. Amy Barrett, “Vanguard Gets Personal,” *BusinessWeek*, October 3, 2005, pp. 115–18; Carolyn Marconi and Donna MacFarland, “Growth by Marketing under the Radar,” Presentation made at Marketing Science Institute Board of Trustees Meeting: Pathways to Growth, Tucson, AZ, November 7, 2002.
 60. www.schneider.com; www.informs.org; Todd Raphael, “Facing ‘Fierce Competition,’ Schneider National Struggles to Fill Trucking Jobs,” *Inside Recruiting*, May 31, 2006.
 61. Roger Yu, “Sheraton Has Designs on Fresh Look,” *USA TODAY*, August 26, 2008, p. 4B.
 62. Robert Levine, “Globe Trotter,” *Fast Company*, September 2008, pp. 73–74; Andrew McMains, “Q&A: Kayak’s Robert Birge,” *Adweek.com*, June 2, 2009; Peter West, “Retail Medical Clinics Offer Quality Care: Study,” *HealthDay*, August 31, 2009; “More Medical Clinics Opening in Retail Stores,” *Associated Press*, February 2, 2006; Ellen McGirt, “Fast Food Medicine,” *Fast Company*, September 2007, pp. 37–38; “Kenny Dichter: A Big Idea Takes Off,” Special Advertising Supplement, CIT Behind the Business, *Condé Nast Portfolio*, September 2007.
 63. Jessi Hempel, “Salesforce Hits Its Stride,” *Fortune*, March 2, 2009, pp. 29–32.
 64. Jena McGregor, “USAA’s Battle Plan,” *Bloomberg BusinessWeek*, March 1, 2010, pp. 40–43; Jena McGregor, “When Service Means Survival,” *BusinessWeek*, March 2, 2009, pp. 26–30; “Customer Service Champs,” *BusinessWeek*, March 5, 2007; “USAA Receives Chairman’s Award,” *San Antonio Business Journal*, June 20, 2002.
 65. Susan M. Keaveney, “Customer Switching Behavior in Service Industries: An Exploratory Study,” *Journal of Marketing* 59 (April 1995), pp. 71–82. See also,

- Jaishankar Ganesh, Mark J. Arnold, and Kristy E. Reynolds, "Understanding the Customer Base of Service Providers: An Examination of the Differences between Switchers and Stayers," *Journal of Marketing* 64 (July 2000), pp. 65–87; Michael D. Hartline and O. C. Ferrell, "The Management of Customer-Contact Service Employees: An Empirical Investigation," *Journal of Marketing* 60 (October 1996), pp. 52–70; Linda L. Price, Eric J. Arnould, and Patrick Tierney, "Going to Extremes: Managing Service Encounters and Assessing Provider Performance," *Journal of Marketing* 59 (April 1995), pp. 83–97; Lois A. Mohr, Mary Jo Bitner, and Bernard H. Booms, "Critical Service Encounters: The Employee's Viewpoint," *Journal of Marketing* 58 (October 1994), pp. 95–106.
66. Dave Dougherty and Ajay Murthy, "What Service Customers Really Want," *Harvard Business Review*, September 2009, p. 22.
 67. Glenn B. Voss, A. Parasuraman, and Dhruv Grewal, "The Role of Price, Performance, and Expectations in Determining Satisfaction in Service Exchanges," *Journal of Marketing* 62 (October 1998), pp. 46–61.
 68. Roland T. Rust and Richard L. Oliver, "Should We Delight the Customer?" *Journal of the Academy of Marketing Science* 28 (December 2000), pp. 86–94.
 69. A. Parasuraman, Valarie A. Zeithaml, and Leonard L. Berry, "A Conceptual Model of Service Quality and Its Implications for Future Research," *Journal of Marketing* 49 (Fall 1985), pp. 41–50. See also, Michael K. Brady and J. Joseph Cronin Jr., "Some New Thoughts on Conceptualizing Perceived Service Quality," *Journal of Marketing* 65 (July 2001), pp. 34–49; Susan J. Devlin and H. K. Dong, "Service Quality from the Customers' Perspective," *Marketing Research* (Winter 1994), pp. 4–13.
 70. Leonard L. Berry and A. Parasuraman, *Marketing Services: Competing through Quality* (New York: Free Press, 1991), p. 16.
 71. A. Parasuraman, Valarie A. Zeithaml, and Leonard L. Berry, "A Conceptual Model of Service Quality and Its Implications for Future Research," *Journal of Marketing* 49 (Fall 1985), pp. 41–50.
 72. William Boulding, Ajay Kalra, Richard Staelin, and Valarie A. Zeithaml, "A Dynamic Model of Service Quality: From Expectations to Behavioral Intentions," *Journal of Marketing Research* 30 (February 1993), pp. 7–27.
 73. Roland T. Rust and Tuck Siong Chung, "Marketing Models of Service and Relationships," *Marketing Science* 25 (November–December 2006), pp. 560–80; Katherine N. Lemon, Tiffany Barnett White, and Russell S. Winer, "Dynamic Customer Relationship Management: Incorporating Future Considerations into the Service Retention Decision," *Journal of Marketing* 66 (January 2002), pp. 1–14; Ruth N. Bolton and Katherine N. Lemon, "A Dynamic Model of Customers' Usage of Services: Usage as an Antecedent and Consequence of Satisfaction," *Journal of Marketing Research* 36 (May 1999), pp. 171–86.
 74. Kent Grayson and Tim Ambler, "The Dark Side of Long-Term Relationships in Marketing Services," *Journal of Marketing Research* 36 (February 1999), pp. 132–41.
 75. Leonard L. Berry, Kathleen Seiders, and Dhruv Grewal, "Understanding Service Convenience," *Journal of Marketing* 66 (July 2002), pp. 1–17.
 76. "Help Yourself," *Economist*, July 2, 2009, pp. 62–63.
 77. Jeffrey F. Rayport and Bernard J. Jaworski, *Best Face Forward* (Boston: Harvard Business School Press, 2005); Jeffrey F. Rayport, Bernard J. Jaworski, and Ellie J. Kyung, "Best Face Forward," *Journal of Interactive Marketing* 19 (Autumn 2005), pp. 67–80; Jeffrey F. Rayport and Bernard J. Jaworski, "Best Face Forward," *Harvard Business Review*, December 2004, pp. 47–58.
 78. Matthew L. Meuter, Mary Jo Bitner, Amy L. Ostrom, and Stephen W. Brown, "Choosing among Alternative Service Delivery Modes: An Investigation of Customer Trial of Self-Service Technologies," *Journal of Marketing* 69 (April 2005), pp. 61–83.
 79. Eric Fang, Robert W. Palmatier, and Jan-Benedict E. M. Steenkamp, "Effect of Service Transition Strategies on Firm Value," *Journal of Marketing* 72 (September 2008), pp. 1–14.
 80. Mark Vandenbosch and Niraj Dawar, "Beyond Better Products: Capturing Value in Customer Interactions," *MIT Sloan Management Review* 43 (Summer 2002), pp. 35–42; Milind M. Lele and Uday S. Karmarkar, "Good Product Support Is Smart Marketing," *Harvard Business Review*, November–December 1983, pp. 124–32.
 81. For research on the effects of delays in service on service evaluations, see Michael K. Hui and David K. Tse, "What to Tell Consumers in Waits of Different Lengths: An Integrative Model of Service Evaluation," *Journal of Marketing* 60 (April 1996), pp. 81–90; Shirley Taylor, "Waiting for Service: The Relationship between Delays and Evaluations of Service," *Journal of Marketing* 58 (April 1994), pp. 56–69.
 82. Byron G. Augustine, Eric P. Harmon, and Vivek Pandit, "The Right Service Strategies for Product Companies," *McKinsey Quarterly* 1 (2006), pp. 41–51.
 83. Goutam Challagalla, R. Venkatesh, and Ajay K. Kohli, "Proactive Postsales Service: When and Why Does it Pay Off?" *Journal of Marketing* 73 (March 2009), pp. 70–87.

Chapter 14

1. Brian Burnsed, "Where Discounting Can Be Dangerous," *BusinessWeek*, August 3, 2009, p. 49; "Tiffany's Profit Tops Expectations," *Associated Press*, November 26, 2009; Cintra Wilson, "If Bling Had a Hall of Fame," *New York Times*, July 30, 2009; Ellen Byron, "Fashion Victim: To Refurbish Its Image, Tiffany Risks Profits," *Wall Street Journal*, January 10, 2007, p. A1.
2. "The Price Is Wrong," *Economist*, May 25, 2002.

3. Xavier Dreze and Joseph C. Nunes, "Using Combined-Currency Prices to Lower Consumers' Perceived Cost," *Journal of Marketing Research* 41 (February 2004), pp. 59–72; Raghuram Iyengar, Kamel Jedidi, and Rajeev Kohli, "A Conjoint Approach to Multipart Pricing," *Journal of Marketing Research* 45 (April 2008), pp. 195–201; Marco Bertini and Luc Wathieu, "Attention Arousal Through Price Partitioning," *Marketing Science* 27 (March/April 2008), pp. 236–46.
4. Rick Newman, "The Great Retail Revolution," *U.S. News & World Report*, March 2010, pp. 19–20; Philip Moeller, "Tough Times Are Molding Tough Consumers," *U.S. News & World Report*, March 2010, pp. 22–25; Steve Hamm, "The New Age of Frugality," *BusinessWeek*, October 20, 2008, pp. 55–60; Timothy W. Martin, "Frugal Shoppers Drive Grocers Back to Basics," *Wall Street Journal*, June 24, 2009, p. B1; Daniel Gross, "The Latte Era Grinds Down," *Newsweek*, October 22, 2007, pp. 46–47.
5. Paul Markillie, "A Perfect Market: A Survey of E-Commerce," *Economist*, May 15, 2004, pp. 3–20; David Kirpatrick, "How the Open-Source World Plans to Smack Down Microsoft, and Oracle, and . . .," *Fortune*, February 23, 2004, pp. 92–100; Faith Keenan, "The Price Is Really Right," *BusinessWeek*, March 31, 2003, pp. 61–67; Michael Menduno, "Priced to Perfection," *Business 2.0*, March 6, 2001, pp. 40–42; Amy E. Cortese, "Good-Bye to Fixed Pricing?" *BusinessWeek*, May 4, 1998, pp. 71–84. For a discussion of some of the basic academic issues involved, see Florian Zettelmeyer, "Expanding to the Internet: Pricing and Communication Strategies when Firms Compete on Multiple Channels," *Journal of Marketing Research* 37 (August 2000), pp. 292–308; John G. Lynch Jr. and Dan Ariely, "Wine Online: Search Costs Affect Competition on Price, Quality, and Distribution," *Marketing Science* 19 (Winter 2000), pp. 83–103; Rajiv Lal and Miklos Sarvary, "When and How Is the Internet Likely to Decrease Price Competition?" *Marketing Science* 18 (Fall 1999), pp. 485–503.
6. Daniel Fisher, "Cheap Seats," *Forbes*, August 24, 2009, pp. 102–3.
7. Bernard Condon, "The Hagggle Economy," *Forbes*, June 8, 2009, pp. 26–27.
8. For a thorough review of pricing research, see Chezy Ofir and Russell S. Winer, "Pricing: Economic and Behavioral Models," Bart Weitz and Robin Wensley, eds., *Handbook of Marketing* (London: Sage Publications, 2002).
9. Based on Pia Sarkar, "Which Shirt Costs \$275?—Brand Loyalty, Bargain Hunting, and Unbridled Luxury All Play a Part in the Price You'll Pay for a T-Shirt," *Final Edition*, March 15, 2007, p. C1. Reprinted by permission.
10. Bruce Horovitz, "Sale, Sale, Sale: Today Everyone Wants a Deal," *USA Today*, April 21, 2010, pp. 1A–2A.
11. Sbriya Rice, "'I Can't Afford Surgery in the U.S.,' Says Bargain Shopper," *CNN*, www.cnn.com, April 26, 2010.
12. Jay Greene, "Selling \$8 Soap in an Era of Frugality," *BusinessWeek*, November 30, 2009, p. 66.
13. Peter R. Dickson and Alan G. Sawyer, "The Price Knowledge and Search of Supermarket Shoppers," *Journal of Marketing* 54 (July 1990), pp. 42–53. For a methodological qualification, however, see Hooman Estalami, Alfred Holden, and Donald R. Lehmann, "Macro-Economic Determinants of Consumer Price Knowledge: A Meta-Analysis of Four Decades of Research," *International Journal of Research in Marketing* 18 (December 2001), pp. 341–55.
14. For a comprehensive review, see Tridib Mazumdar, S. P. Raj, and Indrajit Sinha, "Reference Price Research: Review and Propositions," *Journal of Marketing* 69 (October 2005), pp. 84–102. For a different point of view, see Chris Janiszewski and Donald R. Lichtenstein, "A Range Theory Account of Price Perception," *Journal of Consumer Research* 25 (March 1999), pp. 353–68.
15. For a discussion of how "incidental" prices outside the category can serve as contextual reference prices, see Joseph C. Nunes and Peter Boatwright, "Incidental Prices and Their Effect on Willingness to Pay," *Journal of Marketing Research* 41 (November 2004), pp. 457–66.
16. K. N. Rajendran and Gerard J. Tellis, "Contextual and Temporal Components of Reference Price," *Journal of Marketing* 58 (January 1994), pp. 22–34; Gurumurthy Kalyanaram and Russell S. Winer, "Empirical Generalizations from Reference-Price Research," *Marketing Science* 14 (Summer 1995), pp. G161–69. See also, Ritesh Saini, Raghunath Singh Rao, and Ashwani Monga, "Is the Deal Worth My Time? The Interactive Effect of Relative and Referent Thinking on Willingness to Seek a Bargain," *Journal of Marketing* 74 (January 2010), pp. 34–48.
17. Gurumurthy Kalyanaram and Russell S. Winer, "Empirical Generalizations from Reference-Price Research," *Marketing Science* 14 (Summer 1995), pp. 161–69.
18. Glenn E. Mayhew and Russell S. Winer, "An Empirical Analysis of Internal and External Reference-Price Effects Using Scanner Data," *Journal of Consumer Research* 19 (June 1992), pp. 62–70.
19. Robert Ziethammer, "Forward-Looking Buying in Online Auctions," *Journal of Marketing Research* 43 (August 2006), pp. 462–76.
20. John T. Gourville, "Pennies-a-Day: The Effect of Temporal Reframing on Transaction Evaluation," *Journal of Consumer Research* 24 (March 1998), pp. 395–408.
21. Gary M. Erickson and Johny K. Johansson, "The Role of Price in Multi-Attribute Product-Evaluations," *Journal of Consumer Research* 12 (September 1985), pp. 195–99.
22. Wilfred Amaldoss and Sanjay Jain, "Pricing of Conspicuous Goods: A Competitive Analysis of Social Effects," *Journal of Marketing Research* 42 (February 2005); Angela Chao and Juliet B. Schor, "Empirical Tests of Status Consumption: Evidence from Women's

- Cosmetics," *Journal of Economic Psychology* 19 (January 1998), pp. 107–31.
23. Mark Stiving and Russell S. Winer, "An Empirical Analysis of Price Endings with Scanner Data," *Journal of Consumer Research* 24 (June 1997), pp. 57–68.
 24. Eric T. Anderson and Duncan Simester, "Effects of \$9 Price Endings on Retail Sales: Evidence from Field Experiments," *Quantitative Marketing and Economics* 1 (March 2003), pp. 93–110.
 25. Eric Anderson and Duncan Simester, "Mind Your Pricing Cues," *Harvard Business Review*, September 2003, pp. 96–103.
 26. Robert M. Schindler and Patrick N. Kirby, "Patterns of Rightmost Digits Used in Advertised Prices: Implications for Nine-Ending Effects," *Journal of Consumer Research* 24 (September 1997), pp. 192–201.
 27. Anderson and Simester, "Mind Your Pricing Cues," *Harvard Business Review*, September 2003, pp. 96–103.
 28. Ibid.
 29. Daniel J. Howard and Roger A. Kerin, "Broadening the Scope of Reference-Price Advertising Research: A Field Study of Consumer Shopping Involvement," *Journal of Marketing* 70 (October 2006), pp. 185–204.
 30. Robert C. Blattberg and Kenneth Wisniewski, "Price-Induced Patterns of Competition," *Marketing Science* 8 (Fall 1989), pp. 291–309; Katherine N. Lemon and Stephen M. Nowlis, "Developing Synergies between Promotions and Brands in Different Price-Quality Tiers," *Journal of Marketing Research* 39 (May 2002), pp. 171–85; but see also, Serdar Sayman, Stephen J. Hoch, and Jagmohan S. Raju, "Positioning of Store Brands," *Marketing Science* 21 (Fall 2002), pp. 378–97.
 31. Shantanu Dutta, Mark J. Zbaracki, and Mark Bergen, "Pricing Process as a Capability: A Resource-Based Perspective," *Strategic Management Journal* 24 (July 2003), pp. 615–30.
 32. "To All iPhone Customers," *Apple Inc.*, www.apple.com/hotnews/openiphoneletter; Gary F. Gebhardt, "Price Skimming's Unintended Consequences," *Marketing Science Institute Working Paper Series*, MSI Report No. 09-109.
 33. Michael Silverstein and Neil Fiske, *Trading Up: The New American Luxury* (New York: Portfolio, 2003).
 34. Christopher Lawton, "A Liquor Maverick Shakes Up Industry with Pricey Brands," *Wall Street Journal*, May 21, 2003.
 35. Timothy Aepfel, "Seeking Perfect Prices, CEO Tears Up the Rules," *Wall Street Journal*, March 27, 2007.
 36. Florian Zettelmeyer, Fiona Scott Morton, and Jorge Silva-Risso, "How the Internet Lowers Prices: Evidence from Matched Survey and Automobile Transaction Data," *Journal of Marketing Research* 43 (May 2006), pp. 168–81; Jeffrey R. Brown and Austan Goolsbee, "Does the Internet Make Markets More Competitive? Evidence from the Life Insurance Industry," *Journal of Political Economy* 110 (October 2002), pp. 481–507.
 37. Joo Heon Park and Douglas L. MacLachlan, "Estimating Willingness to Pay with Exaggeration Bias-Corrected Contingent Valuation Method," *Marketing Science* 27 (July–August 2008), pp. 691–98.
 38. Walter Baker, Mike Marn, and Craig Zawada, "Price Smarter on the Net," *Harvard Business Review*, February 2001, pp. 122–27.
 39. Brian Bergstein, "The Price Is Right," *Associated Press*, April 29, 2007.
 40. Thomas T. Nagle and Reed K. Holden, *The Strategy and Tactics of Pricing*, 3rd ed. (Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2002).
 41. For a summary of elasticity studies, see Dominique M. Hanssens, Leonard J. Parsons, and Randall L. Schultz, *Market Response Models: Econometric and Time Series Analysis* (Boston: Kluwer, 1990), pp. 187–91.
 42. Tammo H. A. Bijmolt, Harald J. Van Heerde, and Rik G. M. Pieters, "New Empirical Generalizations on the Determinants of Price Elasticity," *Journal of Marketing Research* 42 (May 2005), pp. 141–56.
 43. William W. Alberts, "The Experience Curve Doctrine Reconsidered," *Journal of Marketing* 53 (July 1989), pp. 36–49.
 44. Michael Sivy, "Japan's Smart Secret Weapon," *Fortune*, August 12, 1991, p. 75.
 45. Joseph Weber, "Over a Buck for Dinner? Outrageous," *BusinessWeek*, March 9, 2009, p. 57.
 46. Reena Jane, "From India, the Latest Management Fad," *Bloomberg BusinessWeek*, December 14, 2009, p. 57; Julie Jargon, "General Mills Takes Several Steps to Combat High Commodity Costs," *Wall Street Journal*, September 20, 2007; Mina Kimes, "Cereal Cost Cutters," *Fortune*, November 10, 2008, p. 24.
 47. Jack Ewing, "The Next Wal-Mart?" *BusinessWeek*, April 26, 2004, pp. 60–62; "German Discounter Aldi Aims to Profit from Belt-Tightening in US," *DW World.de*, www.dw-world.de, January 15, 2009; Aldi, www.aldi.com.
 48. "Green Works Natural Cleaners and Sierra Club Celebrate Two Year Anniversary; Doubling of Natural Cleaning Category," *Green Works*, www.greenworkscleaners.com, June 28, 2010; "This or That? Clorox Greenworks Cleaning Up in the Market Tip of the Day," *Green Daily*, www.greendaily.com, January 24, 2009; "Annual GMA Award Recognizes Clorox and Kettle Foods for Innovation and Creativity," *GMA*, www.gmaonline.org/awardssurvey/cpg.cfm, August 5, 2008.
 49. Kusum L. Ailawadi, Donald R. Lehmann, and Scott A. Neslin, "Market Response to a Major Policy Change in the Marketing Mix: Learning from Procter & Gamble's Value Pricing Strategy," *Journal of Marketing* 65 (January 2001), pp. 44–61.
 50. Timothy Aepfel, "Seeking Perfect Prices, CEO Tears Up the Rules," *Wall Street Journal*, March 27, 2007;

- Todd Shryock, "Parker Hannifin: Perpetual Motion," *Smart Business Cleveland*, October 1, 2005; Tom Brennan, "High-Tech Parker Hannifin?" *CNBC*, www.cnbc.com, April 29, 2008.
51. Bruce Einhorn, "Acer's Game-Changing PC Offensive," *BusinessWeek*, April 20, 2009, p. 65; Bruce Einhorn and Tim Culpan, "With Dell in the Dust, Acer Chases HP," *Bloomberg BusinessWeek*, March 8, 2010, pp. 58–59.
 52. Tung-Zong Chang and Albert R. Wildt, "Price, Product Information, and Purchase Intention: An Empirical Study," *Journal of the Academy of Marketing Science* 22 (Winter 1994), pp. 16–27. See also, G. Dean Kortge and Patrick A. Okonkwo, "Perceived Value Approach to Pricing," *Industrial Marketing Management* 22 (May 1993), pp. 133–40.
 53. Michael Arndt, "PACCAR: Built for the Long-Haul," *BusinessWeek*, January 30, 2006; Jay Thompson, "The 2010 U.S. Diesel Engine Landscape—Paccar's Approach Will Be Most Changed Without Cat," *Gerson Lehrman Group*, www.glgroup.com; Angel Gonzales, "Paccar's Fuel-Saving Hybrid Truck Aimed at Nation's Distribution," *Seattle Times*, July 29, 2008; Paccar, www.paccar.com.
 54. Anupam Mukerj, "Monsoon Marketing," *Fast Company*, April 2007, p. 22.
 55. Marco Bertini and Luc Wathieu, "How to Stop Customers from Fixating on Price," *Harvard Business Review*, May 2010, pp. 85–91.
 56. James C. Anderson, Dipak C. Jain, and Pradeep K. Chintagunta, "Customer Value Assessment in Business Markets: A State-of-Practice Study," *Journal of Business-to-Business Marketing* 1 (Spring 1993), pp. 3–29.
 57. Bill Saporito, "Behind the Tumult at P&G," *Fortune*, March 7, 1994, pp. 74–82. For empirical analysis of its effects, see Kusim L. Ailawadi, Donald R. Lehmann, and Scott A. Neslin, "Market Response to a Major Policy Change in the Marketing Mix: Learning from Procter & Gamble's Value Pricing Strategy," *Journal of Marketing* 65 (January 2001), pp. 44–61.
 58. Laurie Burkitt, "Take It All Off," *Forbes*, March 29, 2010, p. 59; Dan Beucke, "A Blade Too Far," *BusinessWeek*, August 14, 2006; Jenn Abelson, "And Then There Were Five," *Boston Globe*, September 15, 2005; Jack Neff, "Six-Blade Blitz," *Advertising Age*, September 19, 2005, pp. 3, 53; Editorial, "Gillette Spends Smart on Fusion," *Advertising Age*, September 26, 2005, p. 24.
 59. Elisabeth Sullivan, "Value Pricing," *Marketing News*, January 15, 2008, p. 08.
 60. Stephen J. Hoch, Xavier Dreze, and Mary J. Purk, "EDLP, Hi-Lo, and Margin Arithmetic," *Journal of Marketing* 58 (October 1994), pp. 16–27; Rajiv Lal and R. Rao, "Supermarket Competition: The Case of Everyday Low Pricing," *Marketing Science* 16 (Winter 1997), pp. 60–80; Michael Tsiros and David M. Hardesty, "Ending a Price Promotion: Retracting It in One Step or Phasing It Out Gradually," *Journal of Marketing* 74 (January 2010), pp. 49–64.
 61. Joseph W. Alba, Carl F. Mela, Terence A. Shimp, and Joel E. Urbany, "The Effect of Discount Frequency and Depth on Consumer Price Judgments," *Journal of Consumer Research* 26 (September 1999), pp. 99–114; Paul B. Ellickson and Sanjog Misra, "Supermarket Pricing Strategies," *Marketing Science*, 27 (September–October 2008), pp. 811–28.
 62. David Welch, "Haggling Starts to Go the Way of the Tail Fin," *BusinessWeek*, October 29, 2007, pp. 71–72.
 63. Sean Gregory, "Dollar Stores: A Great Price for the Recession," *Time*, October 6, 2009; Robert Stammers, "Dollar Stores Defy Market," *Forbes.com*, March 5, 2009; John Dobosz, "Putting Family Dollar on the Shopping List," *Forbes*, August 23, 2006; Jeff Meyer, "The Mad Dash to the Dollar Shop," *Christian Science Monitor*, August 4, 2003, p. 13; "Low Prices, Treasure Hunts Build Dollar Empire," *DSN Retailing Today*, November 24, 2003, pp. 23–24.
 64. Ethan Smith and Sara Silver, "To Protect Its Box-Office Turf, Ticketmaster Plays Rivals' Tune," *Wall Street Journal*, September 12, 2006.
 65. "Royal Mail Drives Major Cost Savings through Free Markets," Free Markets press release, December 15, 2003.
 66. Using expected profit for setting price makes sense for the seller that makes many bids. The seller who bids only occasionally or who needs a particular contract badly will not find it advantageous to use expected profit. This criterion does not distinguish between a \$1,000 profit with a 0.10 probability and a \$125 profit with a 0.80 probability. Yet the firm that wants to keep production going would prefer the second contract to the first.
 67. Bernard Condon, "The Haggles Economy," *Forbes*, June 8, 2009, pp. 26–27; Sandy D. Jap, "The Impact of Online Reverse Auction Design on Buyer-Supplier Relationships," *Journal of Marketing* 71 (January 2007), pp. 146–59; Sandy D. Jap, "An Exploratory Study of the Introduction of Online Reverse Auctions," *Journal of Marketing* 67 (July 2003), pp. 96–107.
 68. Paul W. Farris and David J. Reibstein, "How Prices, Expenditures, and Profits Are Linked," *Harvard Business Review*, November–December 1979, pp. 173–84. See also, Makoto Abe, "Price and Advertising Strategy of a National Brand against Its Private-Label Clone: A Signaling Game Approach," *Journal of Business Research* 33 (July 1995), pp. 241–50.
 69. Eugene H. Fram and Michael S. McCarthy, "The True Price of Penalties," *Marketing Management*, October 1999, pp. 49–56.
 70. Joel E. Urbany, "Justifying Profitable Pricing," *Journal of Product and Brand Management* 10 (2001), pp. 141–57; Charles Fishman, "The Wal-Mart You Don't Know," *Fast Company*, December 2003, pp. 68–80.
 71. P. N. Agarwala, *Countertrade: A Global Perspective* (New Delhi: Vikas, 1991); Michael Rowe, *Countertrade* (London: Euromoney Books, 1989); Christopher M. Korth, ed., *International Countertrade* (New York: Quorum Books, 1987).

72. For an interesting discussion of a quantity surcharge, see David E. Sprott, Kenneth C. Manning, and Anthony Miyazaki, "Grocery Price Settings and Quantity Surcharges," *Journal of Marketing* 67 (July 2003), pp. 34–46.
73. Michael V. Marn and Robert L. Rosiello, "Managing Price, Gaining Profit," *Harvard Business Review*, September–October 1992, pp. 84–94. See also, Kusum L. Ailawadi, Scott A. Neslin, and Karen Gedenk, "Pursuing the Value-Conscious Consumer: Store Brands versus National-Brand Promotions," *Journal of Marketing* 65 (January 2001), pp. 71–89; Gerard J. Tellis, "Tackling the Retailer Decision Maze: Which Brands to Discount, How Much, When, and Why?" *Marketing Science* 14 (Summer 1995), pp. 271–99.
74. Michael J. Barone and Tirthankar Roy, "Does Exclusivity Always Pay Off? Exclusive Price Promotions and Consumer Response," *Journal of Marketing* 74 (March 2010), pp. 121–32.
75. Jay E. Klompmaker, William H. Rogers, and Anthony E. Nygren, "Value, Not Volume," *Marketing Management* (May–June 2003), pp. 45–48; Lands' End, www.landsend.com, June 23, 2010.
76. Peter Burrows and Olga Kharif, "Can AT&T Tame the iHogs," *Bloomberg BusinessWeek*, December 28, 2009 and January 4, 2010, pp. 21–22.
77. Ramarao Deesiraju and Steven M. Shugan, "Strategic Service Pricing and Yield Management," *Journal of Marketing* 63 (January 1999), pp. 44–56; Robert E. Weigand, "Yield Management: Filling Buckets, Papering the House," *Business Horizons* 42 (September–October 1999), pp. 55–64.
78. Charles Fishman, "Which Price Is Right?" *Fast Company*, March 2003, pp. 92–102; Bob Tedeschi, "E-Commerce Report," *New York Times*, September 2, 2002; Faith Keenan, "The Price Is Really Right," *BusinessWeek*, March 31, 2003, pp. 62–67; Peter Coy, "The Power of Smart Pricing," *BusinessWeek*, April 10, 2000, pp. 160–64. For a review of some seminal work linking pricing decisions with operational insights, see Moritz Fleischmann, Joseph M. Hall, and David F. Pyke, "Research Brief: Smart Pricing," *MIT Sloan Management Review* (Winter 2004), pp. 9–13.
79. Mike France, "Does Predatory Pricing Make Microsoft a Predator?" *BusinessWeek*, November 23, 1998, pp. 130–32. Also see Joseph P. Gultinan and Gregory T. Gundlack, "Aggressive and Predatory Pricing: A Framework for Analysis," *Journal of Advertising* 60 (July 1996), pp. 87–102.
80. For more information on specific types of price discrimination that are illegal, see Henry Cheeseman, *Business Law*, 6th ed. (Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2007).
81. Bob Donath, "Dispel Major Myths about Pricing," *Marketing News*, February 3, 2003, p. 10. For an interesting historical account, see Meghan R. Busse, Duncan I. Simester, Florian Zettelmeyer, "The Best Price You'll Ever Get': The 2005 Employee Discount Pricing Promotions, in the U.S. Automobile Industry," *Marketing Science* 29 (March–April 2010), pp. 268–90.
82. Harald J. Van Heerde, Els Gijsbrechts, and Koen Pauwels, "Winners and Losers in a Major Price War," *Journal of Marketing Research* 45 (October 2008), pp. 499–518.
83. For a classic review, see Kent B. Monroe, "Buyers' Subjective Perceptions of Price," *Journal of Marketing Research* 10 (February 1973), pp. 70–80. See also, Z. John Zhang, Fred Feinberg, and Aradhna Krishna, "Do We Care What Others Get? A Behaviorist Approach to Targeted Promotions," *Journal of Marketing Research* 39 (August 2002), pp. 277–91.
84. Margaret C. Campbell, "Perceptions of Pricing Unfairness: Antecedents and Consequences," *Journal of Marketing Research* 36 (May 1999), pp. 187–99.
85. Lan Xia, Kent B. Monroe, and Jennifer L. Cox, "The Price Is Unfair! A Conceptual Framework of Price Fairness Perceptions," *Journal of Marketing* 68 (October 2004), pp. 1–15; Eric T. Anderson and Duncan Simester, "Does Demand Fall when Customers Perceive That Prices Are Unfair? The Case of Premium Pricing for Larger Sizes," *Marketing Science* 27 (May–June 2008), pp. 492–500.
86. Eric Mitchell, "How Not to Raise Prices," *Small Business Reports*, November 1990, pp. 64–67.
87. Nirmalya Kumar, "Strategies to Fight Low-Cost Rivals," *Harvard Business Review* (December 2006): 104–12. See also Michael F. Porter, *Competitive Strategy: Techniques for Analyzing Industries and Competitors* (New York: Free Press, 1980); Adrian Ryans, *Beating Low Cost Competition: How Premium Brands Can Respond to Cut-Price Rivals* (West Sussex, England: John Wiley & Sons, 2008); Jack Neff, "How the Discounters Hurt Themselves," *Advertising Age*, December 10, 2007, p. 12.

Chapter 15

- Gloria Goodale, "Netflix: From Movies in the Mall to Movies on Demand?" *Christian Science Monitor*, September 1, 2006, p. 11; Timothy J. Mullaney, "The Mail Order House That Clobbered Blockbuster," *BusinessWeek*, June 5, 2006, pp. 56–57; Jefferson Graham, "Netflix Is Still Renting Strong," *USA Today*, July 1, 2009, p. 2B; Ronald Grover, Adam Satariano, and Ari Levy, "Honest, Hollywood, Netflix Is Your Friend," *Bloomberg BusinessWeek*, January 11, 2010, pp. 54–55; Michael V. Copeland, "Tapping Tech's Beautiful Minds," *Fortune*, October 12, 2009, pp. 35–36; Clive Thompson, "If You Liked This, Sure to Love That," *New York Times*, November 21, 2008; Jessica Mintz, "Redbox Machines Take on Netflix's Red Envelope," *USA Today*, June 22, 2009; Michael Kraus, "How Redbox Is Changing Retail," *Marketing News*, November 15, 2009, p. 23.
- Anne T. Coughlan, Erin Anderson, Louis W. Stern, and Adel I. El-Ansary, *Marketing Channels*, 7th ed. (Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2007).

3. Louis W. Stern and Barton A. Weitz, "The Revolution in Distribution: Challenges and Opportunities," *Long Range Planning* 30 (December 1997), pp. 823–29.
4. For an insightful summary of academic research, see Erin Anderson and Anne T. Coughlan, "Channel Management: Structure, Governance, and Relationship Management," Bart Weitz and Robin Wensley, eds., *Handbook of Marketing* (London: Sage, 2001), pp. 223–47. See also, Gary L. Frazier, "Organizing and Managing Channels of Distribution," *Journal of the Academy of Marketing Sciences* 27 (Spring 1999), pp. 226–40.
5. Kerry Capell, "Thinking Simple at Philips," *BusinessWeek*, December 11, 2006, p. 50; Royal Philips Electronics Annual Report, 2009; "Philips—Unfulfilled," *Brandchannel.com*, June 20, 2005; Jennifer L. Schenker, "Fine-Tuning a Fuzzy Image," *TIMEurope.com*, Spring 2002.
6. Sarah E. Needleman, "Dial-a-Mattress Retailer Blames Troubles on Stores, Executive Team," *Wall Street Journal*, July 14, 2009, p. B1.
7. Martin Wildberger, "Multichannel Business Basics for Successful E-Commerce," *Electronic Commerce News*, September 16, 2002, p. 1; Matthew Haerberle, "REI Overhauls Its E-Commerce," *Chain Store Age*, January 2003, p. 64.
8. Chekitan S. Dev and Don E. Schultz, "In the Mix: A Customer-Focused Approach Can Bring the Current Marketing Mix into the 21st Century," *Marketing Management* 14 (January–February 2005).
9. www.oracle.com, December 09, 2010.
10. www.apple.com, December 09, 2010.
11. Robert Shaw and Philip Kotler, "Rethinking the Chain," *Marketing Management* (July/August 2009), pp. 18–23.
12. Anne T. Coughlan, "Channel Management: Structure, Governance, and Relationship Management," Bart Weitz and Robin Wensley, eds., *Handbook of Marketing* (London: Sage, 2001), pp. 223–47.
13. For additional information on backward channels, see Marianne Jahre, "Household Waste Collection as a Reverse Channel: A Theoretical Perspective," *International Journal of Physical Distribution and Logistics* 25 (1995), pp. 39–55; Terrance L. Pohlen and M. Theodore Farris II, "Reverse Logistics in Plastics Recycling," *International Journal of Physical Distribution and Logistics* 22 (1992), pp. 35–37.
14. Greenopolis, www.greenopolis.com, December 09, 2010.
15. William M. Bulkeley, "Kodak Revamps Wal-Mart Kiosks," *Wall Street Journal*, September 6, 2006, p. B2; Faith Keenan, "Big Yellow's Digital Dilemma," *BusinessWeek*, March 24, 2003, pp. 80–81.
16. www.clevelandclinic.org, December 09, 2010; Geoff Colvin, "The Cleveland Clinic's Delos Cosgrove," *Fortune*, March 1, 2010, pp. 38–45.
17. Asim Ansari, Carl F. Mela, and Scott A. Neslin, "Customer Channel Migration," *Journal of Marketing Research* 45 (February 2008), pp. 60–76; Jacquelyn S. Thomas and Ursula Y. Sullivan, "Managing Marketing Communications," *Journal of Marketing* 69 (October 2005), pp. 239–51; Sridhar Balasubramanian, Rajagopal Raghunathan, and Vijay Mahajan, "Consumers in a Multichannel Environment: Product Utility, Process Utility, and Channel Choice," *Journal of Interactive Marketing* 19 (Spring 2005), pp. 12–30; Edward J. Fox, Alan L. Montgomery, and Leonard M. Lodish, "Consumer Shopping and Spending across Retail Formats," *Journal of Business* 77 (April 2004), pp. S25–S60.
18. Peter Child, Suzanne Heywood, and Michael Kilger, "Do Retail Brands Travel?" *McKinsey Quarterly* (January 2002), pp. 11–13. For another taxonomy of shoppers, see also Paul F. Nunes and Frank V. Cespedes, "The Customer Has Escaped," *Harvard Business Review*, November 2003, pp. 96–105.
19. John Helyar, "The Only Company Wal-Mart Fears," *Fortune*, November 24, 2003, pp. 158–66. See also, Michael Silverstein and Neil Fiske, *Trading Up: The New American Luxury* (New York: Portfolio, 2003).
20. Susan Broniarczyk, "Product Assortment," Curtis Haugtvedt, Paul Herr, and Frank Kardes, eds., *Handbook of Consumer Psychology*, (New York: Lawrence Erlbaum Associates, 2008), pp. 755–79; Alexander Chernev and Ryan Hamilton, "Assortment Size and Option Attractiveness in Consumer Choice Among Retailers," *Journal of Marketing Research* 46 (June 2009), pp. 410–20; Richard A. Briesch, Pradeep K. Chintagunta, and Edward J. Fox, "How Does Assortment Affect Grocery Store Choice," *Journal of Marketing Research* 46 (April 2009), pp. 176–89.
21. Anne T. Coughlan, Erin Anderson, Louis W. Stern, and Adel I. El-Ansary, *Marketing Channels*, 7th ed. (Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2007).
22. Louis P. Bucklin, *A Theory of Distribution Channel Structure* (Berkeley: Institute of Business and Economic Research, University of California, 1966).
23. Katrijn Gielens and Marnik G. Dekimpe, "The Entry Strategies Retail Firms into Transition Economies," *Journal of Marketing* 71 (April 2007), pp. 196–212.
24. Alex Frankel, "Magic Shop," *Fast Company*, November 2007, pp. 45–49; "Apple Reports Fourth Quarter Results," www.apple.com, October 19, 2009; Jerry Useem, "Simply Irresistible," *Fortune*, March 19, 2007, pp. 107–12; Nick Wingfield, "How Apple's Store Strategy Beat the Odds," *Wall Street Journal*, May 17, 2006; Alice Z. Cuneo, "Apple Transcends as Lifestyle Brand," *Advertising Age*, June 15, 2003, pp. S2, S6; Tobi Elkin, "Apple Gambles with Retail Plan," *Advertising Age*, June 24, 2001.
25. Allison Enright, "Shed New Light," *Marketing News*, May 1, 2006, pp. 9–10.
26. "Exclusives Becoming a Common Practice," *DSN Retailing Today*, February 9, 2004, pp. 38, 44.
27. "Trouser Suit," *Economist*, November 24, 2001, p. 56.
28. www.stihlusa.com/corporate/corporate_facts.html.

29. "Nike Says No to Blue-Light Specials," *Fortune*, May 4, 2005.
30. Robert K. Heady, "Online Bank Offers Best Rates," *South Florida Sun-Sentinel*, November 22, 2004.
31. Anderson and Coughlan, "Channel Management: Structure, Governance, and Relationship Management," *Handbook of Marketing* (London: Sage Publications, 2002), pp. 223–47; Michaela Draganska, Daniel Klapper, and Sofia B. Villa-Boas, "A Larger Slice or a Larger Pie? An Empirical Investigation of Bargaining Power in the Distribution Channel," *Marketing Science* 29 (January–February 2010), pp. 57–74.
32. These bases of power were identified in John R. P. French and Bertram Raven, "The Bases of Social Power," Dorwin Cartwright, ed., *Studies in Social Power* (Ann Arbor: University of Michigan Press, 1959), pp. 150–67.
33. Joydeep Srivastava and Dipankar Chakravarti, "Channel Negotiations with Information Asymmetries: Contingent Influences of Communication and Trustworthiness Reputations," *Journal of Marketing Research* 46 (August 2009), pp. 557–72.
34. Daniel Corsten and Nirmalya Kumar, "Do Suppliers Benefit from Collaborative Relationships with Large Retailers? An Empirical Investigation of Efficient Consumer Response Adoption," *Journal of Marketing* 69 (July 2005), pp. 80–94; for some related research, see Ashwin W. Joshi, "Continuous Supplier Performance Improvement: Effects of Collaborative Communication and Control," *Journal of Marketing* 73 (January 2009), pp. 133–50.
35. Russ Mitchell, "Can Dell Save Dell?" *Condé Nast Portfolio*, July 2008, pp. 84–90; Cliff Edwards, "Dell's Do-Over," *BusinessWeek*, October 26, 2009, pp. 37–40; Christopher Helman, "The Second Coming," *Forbes*, December 10, 2007, pp. 79–86; David Whitford, "Uh . . . Maybe I Should Drive," *Fortune*, April 30, 2007, pp. 125–28; Louise Lee, "It's Dell vs. the Dell Way," *BusinessWeek*, March 6, 2006, pp. 61–62; David Kirkpatrick, "Dell in the Penalty Box," *Fortune*, September 18, 2006, pp. 70–78; Nanette Byrnes, Peter Burrows, and Louise Lee, "Dark Days at Dell," *BusinessWeek*, September 4, 2006, pp. 27–30; Elizabeth Corcoran, "A Bad Spell for Dell," *Forbes*, June 19, 2006, pp. 44–46.
36. For a detailed case study example, see Jennifer Shang, Tuba Pinar Yildirim, Pandu Tadikamalla, Vikas Mittal, and Lawrence Brown, "Distribution Network Redesign for Marketing Competitiveness," *Journal of Marketing* 73 (March 2009), pp. 146–63.
37. Xinlei Chen, George John, and Om Narasimhan, "Assessing the Consequences of a Channel Switch," *Marketing Science* 27 (May–June 2008), pp. 398–416.
38. Thomas H. Davenport and Jeanne G. Harris, *Competing on Analytics: The New Science of Winning* (Boston: Harvard Business School Press, 2007).
39. Junhong Chu, Pradeep K. Chintagunta, and Naufel J. Vilcassim, "Assessing the Economic Value of Distribution Channels: An Application to the Personal Computer Industry," *Journal of Marketing Research* 44 (February 2007), pp. 29–41.
40. Bruce Einhorn, "China: Where Retail Dinosaurs Are Thriving," *Bloomberg BusinessWeek*, February 1 and 8, 2010, p. 64.
41. "Unshackling the Chain Stores," *Economist*, May 31, 2008, pp. 69–70.
42. Richard Gibson, "U.S. Franchises Find Opportunities to Grow Abroad," *Wall Street Journal*, August 11, 2009, p. B5.
43. "Crossroads," *Economist*, March 17, 2007, pp. 71–72; "Shopped Around," *Economist*, October 18, 2008, p. 74; Carol Matlack, "A French Wal-Mart's Global Blitz," *BusinessWeek*, December 21, 2009, pp. 64–65.
44. Michael Arndt, "Urban Outfitters Grow-Slow Strategy," *Bloomberg BusinessWeek*, March 1, 2010, p. 56; Michael Arndt, "How to Play It: Apparel Makers," *Bloomberg BusinessWeek*, March 1, 2010, p. 61.
45. Matthew Boyle and Michael V. Copeland, "Tesco Reinvents the 7-Eleven," *Fortune*, November 26, 2007, p. 34.
46. Jenifer Reingold, "The British (Retail) Invasion," *Fortune*, July 7, 2008, pp. 132–38; Ruth La Ferla, "But Will It Play in Manhattan," *New York Times*, June 21, 2006; Damien Reece, "Topshop's Injection of True Brit Stirs Up the Big Apple," *Daily Telegraph*, April 2, 2009.
47. Stefan Wuyts, Stefan Stremersch, Christophe Van Den Bulte, and Philip Hans Franses, "Vertical Marketing Systems for Complex Products: A Triadic Perspective," *Journal of Marketing Research* 41 (November 2004), pp. 479–87.
48. Russell Johnston and Paul R. Lawrence, "Beyond Vertical Integration: The Rise of the Value-Adding Partnership," *Harvard Business Review*, July–August 1988, pp. 94–101. See also, Arnt Bovik and George John, "When Does Vertical Coordination Improve Industrial Purchasing Relationships," *Journal of Marketing* 64 (October 2000), pp. 52–64; Judy A. Siguaw, Penny M. Simpson, and Thomas L. Baker, "Effects of Supplier Market Orientation on Distributor Market Orientation and the Channel Relationship: The Distribution Perspective," *Journal of Marketing* 62 (July 1998), pp. 99–111; Narakesari Narayandas and Manohar U. Kalwani, "Long-Term Manufacturer–Supplier Relationships: Do They Pay Off for Supplier Firms?" *Journal of Marketing* 59 (January 1995), pp. 1–16.
49. Raji Srinivasan, "Dual Distribution and Intangible Firm Value: Franchising in Restaurant Chains," *Journal of Marketing* 70 (July 2006), pp. 120–35.
50. www.citizensbank.com, December 09, 2010.
51. www.disney.com, December 09, 2010; Joyceann Cooney, "Mooney's Kingdom," *License*, October 1, 2006.
52. Coach Inc. Form 10-K filed with SEC on August 19, 2009.
53. Rajkumar Venkatesan, V. Kumar, and Nalini Ravishanker, "Multichannel Shopping: Causes and

- Consequences," *Journal of Marketing* 71 (April 2007), pp. 114–32.
54. Based on Rowland T. Moriarty and Ursula Moran, "Marketing Hybrid Marketing Systems," *Harvard Business Review*, November–December 1990, pp. 146–55.
 55. Susan Casey, "Eminence Green," *Fortune*, April 2, 2007, pp. 64–70.
 56. Barbara Darow, "Oracle's New Partner Path," *CRN*, August 21, 2006, p. 4.
 57. Anne Coughlan and Louis Stern, "Marketing Channel Design and Management," Dawn Iacobucci, ed., *Kellogg on Marketing* (New York: John Wiley & Sons, 2001), pp. 247–69.
 58. Nirmalya Kumar, "Some Tips on Channel Management," *rediff.com*, July 1, 2005.
 59. Matthew Boyle, "Brand Killers," *Fortune*, August 11, 2003, pp. 51–56; for an opposing view, see Anthony J. Dukes, Esther Gal-Or, and Kannan Srinivasan, "Channel Bargaining with Retailer Asymmetry," *Journal of Marketing Research* 43 (February 2006), pp. 84–97.
 60. Jerry Useem, Julie Schlosser, and Helen Kim, "One Nation under Wal-Mart," *Fortune* (Europe), March 3, 2003.
 61. Sreekumar R. Bhaskaran and Stephen M. Gilbert, "Implications of Channel Structure for Leasing or Selling Durable Goods," *Marketing Science* 28 (September–October 2009), pp. 918–34.
 62. For an example of when conflict can be viewed as helpful, see Anil Arya and Brian Mittendorf, "Benefits of Channel Discord in the Sale of Durable Goods," *Marketing Science* 25 (January–February 2006), pp. 91–96; and Nirmalya Kumar, "Living with Channel Conflict," *CMO Magazine*, October 2004.
 63. This section draws on Coughlan, Anderson, Stern, and El-Ansary, *Marketing Channels*, Chapter 9. See also, Jonathan D. Hibbard, Nirmalya Kumar, and Louis W. Stern, "Examining the Impact of Destructive Acts in Marketing Channel Relationships," *Journal of Marketing Research* 38 (February 2001), pp. 45–61; Kersi D. Antia and Gary L. Frazier, "The Severity of Contract Enforcement in Interfirm Channel Relationships," *Journal of Marketing* 65 (October 2001), pp. 67–81; James R. Brown, Chekita S. Dev, and Dong-Jin Lee, "Managing Marketing Channel Opportunism: The Efficiency of Alternative Governance Mechanisms," *Journal of Marketing* 64 (April 2000), pp. 51–65; Alberto Sa Vinhas and Erin Anderson, "How Potential Conflict Drives Channel Structure: Concurrent (Direct and Indirect) Channels," *Journal of Marketing Research* 42 (November 2005), pp. 507–15.
 64. Nirmalya Kumar, "Living with Channel Conflict," *CMO Magazine*, October 2004.
 65. Andrew Kaplan, "All Together Now?" *Beverage World*, March 2007, pp. 14–16.
 66. Christina Passriello, "Fashionably Late? Designer Brands Are Starting to Embrace E-Commerce," *Wall Street Journal*, May 19, 2006.
 67. Greg Johnson, "Gray Wail: Southern California Companies Are among the Many Upscale Manufacturers Voicing Their Displeasure about Middlemen Delivering Their Goods into the Hands of Unauthorized Discount Retailers," *Los Angeles Times*, March 30, 1997. Also see Paul R. Messinger and Chakravarthi Narasimhan, "Has Power Shifted in the Grocery Channel?" *Marketing Science* 14 (Spring 1995), pp. 189–223.
 68. Joel C. Collier and Carol C. Bienstock, "How Do Customers Judge Quality in an E-tailer," *MIT Sloan Management Review* (Fall 2006), pp. 35–40.
 69. *Coremetrics Benchmark December US Retail*, www.coremetrics.com/downloads/coremetrics-benchmark-industry-report-2008-12-us.pdf.
 70. Jeff Borden, "The Right Tools," *Marketing News*, April 15, 2008, pp. 19–21.
 71. Alexis K. J. Barlow, Noreen Q. Siddiqui, and Mike Mannion, "Development in Information and Communication Technologies for Retail Marketing Channels," *International Journal of Retail and Distribution Management* 32 (March 2004), pp. 157–63; G&J Electronic Media Services, *7th Wave of the GfK-Online-Monitor* (Hamburg: GfK Press, 2001).
 72. Martin Holzwarth, Chris Janiszewski, and Marcus M. Newmann, "The Influence of Avatars on Online Consumer Shopping Behavior," *Journal of Marketing* 70 (October 2006), pp. 19–36.
 73. Ann E. Schlosser, Tiffany Barnett White, and Susan M. Lloyd, "Converting Web Site Visitors into Buyers: How Web Site Investment Increases Consumer Trusting Beliefs and Online Purchase Intentions," *Journal of Marketing* 70 (April 2006), pp. 133–48.
 74. Ronald Abler, John S. Adams, and Peter Gould, *Spatial Organizations: The Geographer's View of the World* (Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 1971), pp. 531–32.
 75. "China's Pied Piper," *Economist*, September 23, 2006, p. 80; Alibaba.com, www.alibaba.com, December 09, 2010; Garry Barker, "The Treasure Keeps Coming for Alibaba," *The Age*, October 27, 2009; Jessica E. Vascellaro, "Alibaba.com Plans U.S Push," *Wall Street Journal*, August 7, 2009; Bruce Einhorn, "At Alibaba, Investors Come Last," *BusinessWeek*, August 17, 2009, p. 50.
 76. For an in-depth academic examination, see John G. Lynch Jr. and Dan Ariely, "Wine Online: Search Costs and Competition on Price, Quality, and Distribution," *Marketing Science* 19 (Winter 2000), pp. 83–103.
 77. Andrea Chang, "Retailers Fuse Stores with E-Commerce," *Los Angeles Times*, June 27, 2010.
 78. Anjali Cordeiro, "Procter & Gamble Sees Aisle Expansion on the Web," *Wall Street Journal*, September 2, 2009, p. B6A; Anjali Cordeiro and Ellen Byron, "Procter & Gamble to Test Online Store to Study Buying Habits," *Wall Street Journal*, January 15, 2010.
 79. Xubing Zhang, "Retailer's Multichannel and Price Advertising Strategies," *Marketing Science* 28 (November–December 2009), pp. 1080–94.

80. Susan Fournier and Lara Lee, "Getting Brand Communities Right," *Harvard Business Review*, April 2009, pp. 105–11; "New Harley Davidson Accessory and Clothing Store," *PRLog*, July 21, 2009; Bob Tedeshi, "How Harley Revved Online Sales," *Business 2.0*, December 2002–January 2003, pp. 44; John W. Schouten, and James H. McAlexander, "Market Impact of a Consumption Subculture: The Harley-Davidson Mystique," Gary J. Bamossy and W. Fred van Raaij, eds., *European Advances in Consumer Research* (Provo, UT: Association for Consumer Research, 1993), pp. 389–93.
81. Nanette Byrnes, "More Clicks at the Bricks," *BusinessWeek*, December 17, 2007, pp. 50–51.
82. Douglas Lamont, *Conquering the Wireless World: The Age of M-Commerce* (New York: John Wiley & Sons, 2001); Herbjørn Nysveen, Per E. Pedersen, Helge Thorbjørnsen, and Pierre Berthon, "Mobilizing the Brand: The Effects of Mobile Services on Brand Relationships and Main Channel Use," *Journal of Service Research* 7 (2005), pp. 257–76; Venkatesh Shankar and Sridhar Balasubramanian, "Mobile Marketing: A Synthesis and Prognosis," *Journal of Interactive Marketing* 23 (2009), pp. 118–29; Venkatesh Shankar, Alladi Venkatesh, Charles Hofacker, and Prasad Naik, "Mobile Marketing in the Retailing Environment: Current Insights and Future Research Avenues," special issue, *Journal of Interactive Marketing*, co-editors Venkatesh Shankar and Manjit Yadav, forthcoming.
83. "The Mobile Internet Report," *Morgan Stanley*, www.morganstanley.com, May 7, 2010.
84. Adam Cahill, Lars Albright, and Carl Howe, "Mobile Advertising and Branding," session as part of the Britt Technology Impact Series, Tuck School of Business, Dartmouth College, March 31, 2010; Alexandre Mars, "Importing Mobile Marketing Tools," *Brandweek*, February 15, 2010, p. 17.
85. Reena Jana, "Retailers Are Learning to Love Smartphones," *BusinessWeek*, October 26, 2009.
86. Nanette Byrnes, "More Clicks at the Bricks," *BusinessWeek*, December 17, 2007, pp. 50–51.
87. Dan Butcher, "Dunkin' Donuts Sweetens Dunkin' Run Campaign with Mobile," *Mobile Marketer*, June 23, 2009; "Dunkin' Donuts Unveils 'Dunkin' Run' Technology to make Group Orders Faster, Easier and More Fun," *Dunkin' Donuts*, press release, June 22, 2009, www.dunkindonuts.com; Rich Mathieson, "Mobile Marketing: Dunkin' Donuts Serves SMS," *Chief Marketer*, July 19, 2006.
88. Culture," *Bloomberg BusinessWeek*, January 11, 2010, p. 57.
2. Karsten Hansen and Vishal Singh, "Market Structure Across Retail Formats," *Marketing Science* 28 (July–August 2009), pp. 656–73.
3. "US Retail E-Commerce Down 3% in Q4, Up Just 6% in 2008," *Retailer Daily*, February 12, 2009.
4. Richard Gibson, "Even 'Copycat' Businesses Require Creativity and Flexibility," *Wall Street Journal Online*, March 2004; *Entrepreneur*, www.entrepreneur.com, December 09, 2010.
5. Raymund Flandez, "New Franchise Idea: Fewer Rules, More Difference," *Wall Street Journal*, September 18, 2007, p. B4.
6. Jena McGregor, "The Hard Sell," *BusinessWeek*, October 26, 2009, pp. 43–45.
7. Joseph Pereira and Ann Zimmerman, "For Toys "R" Us, Holidays Are Open and Shut," *Wall Street Journal*, September 15, 2009, p. B8.
8. Eric Newman, "Retail Design for 2008: Thinking Outside the Box," *Brandweek*, December 17, 2007, p. 26.
9. Scott Cendrowski, "Extreme Retailing," *Fortune*, March 31, 2008, p. 14.
10. Cheryl Lu-Lien Tan, "Hot Kohl's," *Wall Street Journal*, April 16, 2007.
11. "Reinventing the Store—the Future of Retailing," *Economist*, November 22, 2003, pp. 65–68.
12. Matthew Boyle, "IBM Goes Shopping," *Fortune*, November 27, 2006, pp. 77–78; Todd Wasserman, "The Store of the Future," *Brandweek*, December 17, 2007, pp. 23–25; Emma Ritch, "Supermarkets Go Digital," *San Jose Business Journal*, April 11, 2008; Tim Dickey, "Electronic Shelf Labels," *Retail Technology Trends*, February 26, 2010.
13. Michael C. Bellas, "Shopper Marketing's Instant Impact," *Beverage World*, November 2007, p. 18; Richard Westlund, "Bringing Brands to Life: The Power of In-Store Marketing," Special Advertising Supplement to *Adweek*, January 2010.
14. Pierre Chandon, J. Wesley Hutchinson, Eric T. Bradlow, and Scott H. Young, "Does In-Store Marketing Work? Effects of the Number and Position of Shelf Facings on Brand Attention and Evaluation at the Point of Purchase," *Journal of Marketing Research* 73 (November 2009), pp. 1–17.
15. Anthony Dukes and Yunchuan Liu, "In-Store Media and Distribution Channel Coordination," *Marketing Science*, 29 (January–February 2010), pp. 94–107.
16. Michael Freedman, "The Eyes Have It," *Forbes*, September 4, 2006, p. 70.
17. Amy Merrick, "Asking 'What Would Ann Do?'" *Wall Street Journal*, September 15, 2006.
18. Charles Fishman, "The Anarchist's Cookbook," *Fast Company*, July 2004, pp. 70–78; "Whole Foods Market 2009 Annual Report," *Whole Foods Market*, www.wholefoodsmarket.com/company/pdfs/ar09.pdf.

Chapter 16

1. Helen Coster, "A Step Ahead," *Forbes*, June 2, 2008, pp. 78–80; Paula Andruss, "Delivering Wow Through Service," *Marketing News*, October 15, 2008, p. 10; Jeffrey M. O'Brien, "Zappos Knows How to Kick It," *Fortune*, February 2, 2009, pp. 55–60; Brian Morrissey, "Amazon to Buy Zappos," *Adweek*, July 22, 2009; Christopher Palmeri, "Now For Sale, the Zappos

19. Ann Zimmerman and Kris Hudson, "Chasing Upscale Customers Tarnishes Mass-Market Jeweler," *Wall Street Journal*, June 26, 2006; Kris Hudson, "Signet Sparkles with Jewelry Strategy," *Wall Street Journal*, June 26, 2006.
20. "JCPenney Transforms Catalog Strategy to Better Serve Customer Preferences," *BusinessWire*, November 18, 2009; Robert Berner, "JCPenney Gets the Net," *BusinessWeek*, May 7, 2007, p. 70; Robert Berner, "Penney: Back in Fashion," *BusinessWeek*, January 9, 2006, pp. 82–84.
21. Louise Lee, "Catalogs, Catalogs, Everywhere," *BusinessWeek*, December 4, 2006, pp. 32–34; Michael J. Silverstein and Neil Fiske, *Trading Up: The New American Luxury* (New York: Portfolio, 2003); "Victoria's Secret," Case #6-0014, Center for Digital Strategies, Tuck School of Business, Dartmouth College, 2002; www.biz.yahoo.com, December 09, 2010.
22. Jessi Hempel, "Urban Outfitters, Fashion Victim," *BusinessWeek*, July 17, 2006, p. 60.
23. Robert Berner, "To Lure Teenager Mall Rats, You Need the Right Cheese," *BusinessWeek*, June 7, 2004, pp. 96–101; Aeropostale, www.aeropostale.com, December 09, 2010; Jeanine Poggi, "Best in Class: Price Is Right at Aeropostale," *TheStreet*, www.thestreet.com/story/10514026/best-in-class-price-is-right-at-aeropostale.html, June 16, 2009; "Aeropostale, Inc. Seeks New Faces for Fall Ad Campaign with 'Real Teens 2010' Contest," *PR Newswire*, March 15, 2010.
24. Robert Berner, "Chanel's American in Paris," *BusinessWeek*, January 29, 2007, pp. 70–71.
25. Mark Tatge, "Fun & Games," *Forbes*, January 12, 2004, pp. 138–44.
26. Vanessa O'Connell, "Reversing Field, Macy's Goes Local," *Wall Street Journal*, April 21, 2008.
27. Diane Anderson, "RFID Technology Getting Static in New Hampshire," *Brandweek*, January 23, 2006, p. 13; Mary Catherine O'Conner, "Gillette Fuses RFID with Product Launch," *RFID Journal*, March 27, 2006; "The End of Privacy?" *Consumer Reports*, June 2006, pp. 33–40; Erick Schonfeld, "Tagged for Growth," *Business 2.0*, December 2006, pp. 58–61; "Radio Silence," *Economist*, June 9, 2007, pp. 20–21; Todd Lewan, "The Chipping of America," *Associated Press*, July 29, 2007.
28. Uta Werner, John McDermott, and Greg Rotz, "Retailers at the Crossroads: How to Develop Profitable New Growth Strategies," *Journal of Business Strategy* 25 (2004), pp. 10–17.
29. "Trader Joe's Named a Breakaway Brand for 2009," *Supermarket Industry News*, August 17, 2009; Christopher Palmeri, "Trader Joe's Recipe for Success," *BusinessWeek*, February 21, 2008; Deborah Orr, "The Cheap Gourmet," *Forbes*, April 10, 2006, pp. 76–77; Amy Wu, "A Specialty Food Store with a Discount Attitude," *New York Times*, July 27, 2003.
30. Venkatesh Shankar and Ruth N. Bolton, "An Empirical Analysis of Determinants of Retailer Pricing Strategy," *Marketing Science* 23 (Winter 2004), pp. 28–49.
31. www.target.com, December 09, 2010; Ann Zimmerman, "Staying on Target," *Wall Street Journal*, May 7, 2007; Mya Frazier, "The Latest European Import: Fast Fashion," *Advertising Age*, January 9, 2006, p. 6; Julie Schlosser, "How Target Does It," *Fortune*, October 18, 2004, p. 100; Michelle Conlin, "Look Who's Stalking Walmart," *BusinessWeek*, December 7, 2009, pp. 30–36.
32. Duncan Simester, "Signaling Price Image Using Advertised Prices," *Marketing Science* 14 (Summer 1995), pp. 166–88; see also, Jiwoong Shin, "The Role of Selling Costs in Signaling Price Image," *Journal of Marketing Research* 42 (August 2005), pp. 305–12.
33. Frank Feather, *The Future Consumer* (Toronto: Warwick Publishing, 1994), p. 171. Also see David R. Bell and James M. Lattin, "Shopping Behavior and Consumer Preference for Retail Price Format: Why 'Large Basket' Shoppers Prefer EDLP," *Marketing Science* 17 (Spring 1998), pp. 66–68; Stephen J. Hoch, Xavier Dreeze, and Mary E. Purk, "EDLP, Hi-Lo, and Margin Arithmetic," *Journal of Marketing* 58 (October 1994), pp. 1–15.
34. Sarah Fister Gale, "The Bookstore Battle," *Workforce Management* (January 2004), pp. 51–53.
35. Constance L. Hays, "Retailers Seeking to Lure Customers with Service," *New York Times*, December 1, 2003.
36. Amy Gillentine, "Marketing Groups Ignore Women at Their Own Peril," *Colorado Springs Business Journal*, January 20, 2006; Mary Lou Quinlan, "Women Aren't Buying It," *Brandweek*, June 2, 2003, pp. 20–22.
37. Cecile B. Corral, "Profits Pinched, Kohl's Eyes Market Share," *Home Textiles Today*, February 27, 2009; Ilaina Jones, "Kohl's Looking at Spots in Manhattan," *Reuters*, August 19, 2009; Cametta Coleman, "Kohl's Retail Racetrack," *Wall Street Journal*, March 1, 2000.
38. Mindy Fetterman and Jayne O'Donnell, "Just Browsing at the Mall? That's What You Think," *USA Today*, September 1, 2006.
39. "Reinventing the Store," *Economist*, November 22, 2003, pp. 65–68; Moira Cotlier, "Census Releases First E-Commerce Report," *Catalog Age*, May 1, 2001; Associated Press, "Online Sales Boomed at End of 2000," *Star-Tribune of Twin Cities*, February 17, 2001; Kenneth T. Rosen and Amanda L. Howard, "E-Tail: Gold Rush or Fool's Gold?" *California Management Review*, April 1, 2000, pp. 72–100.
40. Velitchka D. Kaltcheva and Barton Weitz, "When Should a Retailer Create an Exciting Store Environment?" *Journal of Marketing* 70 (January 2006), pp. 107–18.
41. For more discussion, see Philip Kotler, "Atmospherics as a Marketing Tool," *Journal of Retailing* (Winter 1973–1974), pp. 48–64. Also see B. Joseph Pine II and James H. Gilmore, *The Experience Economy* (Boston: Harvard Business School Press, 1999).
42. Jeff Cioletti, "Super Marketing," *Beverage World* (November 2006), pp. 60–61.

43. Ben Paynter, "Happy Hour," *Fast Company*, March 2010, p. 34; Jessi Hempel, "Social Media Meets Retailing," *Fortune*, March 22, 2010, p. 30.
44. Carol Tice, "Anchors Away: Department Stores Lose Role at Malls," *Puget Sound Business Journal*, February 13, 2004, p. 1.
45. www.plma.com, April 3, 2010; Emily Bryson York, "Don't Blame Private Label Gains on the Recession," *Advertising Age*, April 21, 2009.
46. Kusum Ailawadi and Bari Harlam, "An Empirical Analysis of the Determinants of Retail Margins: The Role of Store-Brand Share," *Journal of Marketing* 68 (January 2004), pp. 147–65.
47. For a detailed analysis of contemporary research on private labels, see Michael R. Hyman, Dennis A. Kopf, and Dongdae Lee, "Review of Literature—Future Research Suggestions: Private Label Brands: Benefits, Success Factors, and Future Research," *Journal of Brand Management* 17 (March 2010), pp. 368–89. See also, Kusum Ailawadi, Bari Harlam, Jacques Cesar, and David Trounce, "Retailer Promotion Profitability: The Role of Promotion, Brand, Category, and Market Characteristics," *Journal of Marketing Research* 43 (November 2006), pp. 518–35; Kusum Ailawadi, Koen Pauwels, and Jan-Benedict E. M. Steenkamp, "Private Label Use and Store Loyalty," *Journal of Marketing* 72 (November 2008), pp. 19–30.
48. Natasha Singer, "Drug Firms Apply Brand to Generics," *New York Times*, February 16, 2010; Casey Feldman, "Generic Drug Superstars," *Fortune*, August 5, 2009; Mina Kimes, "Teva: The King of Generic Drugs," *Fortune*, August 5, 2009; Jeanne Whalen, "Betting \$10 Billion on Generics, Novartis Seeks to Inject Growth," *Wall Street Journal*, May 4, 2006.
49. Michael Felding, "No Longer Plain, Simple," *Marketing News*, May 15, 2006, pp. 11–13; Rob Walker, "Shelf Improvement," *New York Times*, May 7, 2006.
50. Sonia Reyes, "Saving Private Labels," *Brandweek*, May 8, 2006, pp. 30–34; Andrew Martin, "Store Brands Lift Grocers in Troubled Times," *New York Times*, December 13, 2008.
51. Jim Chrizan, "Loblaw's Reverses Private Label Trend," *Packaging World*, January 22, 2010; "Loblaw Launches a New Line of Discount Store Brands," *Store Brand Decisions*, February 16, 2010; John J. Pierce, "Private Label Stimulus," *Private Label*, March/April 2009.
52. Brett Nelson, "Stuck in the Middle," *Forbes*, August 15, 2005, p. 88; "Arrow Investor Fact Sheet 2009," *Arrow*, www.arrow.com.
53. James A. Narus and James C. Anderson, "Contributing as a Distributor to Partnerships with Manufacturers," *Business Horizons* (September–October 1987). Also see Hlavecek and McCuiston, "Industrial Distributors—When, Who, and How," pp. 96–101.
54. www.grainger.com/Grainger/wwwg/start.shtml, May 8, 2010; Sean Callahan, "Close-up with Deb Oler, VP-Grainger Industrial Supply Brand, W.W. Grainger," *BtoB*, March 3, 2010; Ian Heller, "The Secret of Being Grainger," www.ezinearticles.com, April 30, 2010.
55. "Who Has The Top Consumer Goods Industry Supply Chains for 2008?" *Supply Chain News*, December 17, 2008; "Who Has The Top Retail Industry Supply Chains for 2008?" *Supply Chain News*, January 5, 2009.
56. Johnson & Johnson 2007 Sustainability Report; talk by panelist Chris Hacker, "Production Innovation and Supply Chains: Creating Value for the Next Generation," *Business and Society Conference*, Tuck School of Business at Dartmouth College, January 15, 2009.
57. William C. Copacino, *Supply Chain Management* (Boca Raton, FL: St. Lucie Press, 1997); Robert Shaw and Philip Kotler, "Rethinking the Chain: Making Marketing Leaner, Faster, and Better," *Marketing Management* (July/August 2009), pp. 18–23.
58. "Shrink Rapped," *Economist*, May 17, 2008, p. 80.
59. "U.S. Logistics Cost 10% of GDP," *Logistics Today*, June 26, 2008.
60. Pete Engardio, "Lean and Mean Gets Extreme," *BusinessWeek*, March 23 and 30, 2009, pp. 60–62; Traci Gregory, "ConMed Takes Lean Approach," *Central New York Business Journal*, May 22, 2009.
61. Daisuke Wakabayashi, "How Lean Manufacturing Can Backfire," *Wall Street Journal*, January 30, 2010; for some additional discussion of the downside of lean manufacturing, see Brian Hindo, "At 3M, A Struggle between Efficiency and Creativity," *BusinessWeek*, June 11, 2007.
62. The optimal order quantity is given by the formula $Q^* = 2DS/IC$, where D = annual demand, S = cost to place one order, and I = annual carrying cost per unit. Known as the economic-order quantity formula, it assumes a constant ordering cost, a constant cost of carrying an additional unit in inventory, a known demand, and no quantity discounts. For further reading on this subject, see Richard J. Tersine, *Principles of Inventory and Materials Management*, 4th ed. (Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 1994).
63. William C. Copacino, *Supply Chain Management* (Boca Raton, FL: St. Lucie Press, 1997), pp. 122–23.
64. "Shining Examples," *Economist: A Survey of Logistics*, June 17, 2006, pp. 4–6.
65. Renee DeGross, "Retailers Try eBay Overstocks, Returns for Sale Online," *Atlanta Journal-Constitution*, April 10, 2004.
66. Chuck Salter, "Savvy, with Hints of Guile and Resourcefulness," *Fast Company*, February 2007, p. 50; Heather Mcpherson, "Lots to Like about This Concept: As a Wine Négociant, Cameron Hughes Can Offer Premium Wines at Affordable Prices," *Knight Ridder Tribune Business News*, February 21, 2007, p. 1; Phaedrea Hise and Joanne Chen, "Sleeping with the Boss," *Forbes Small Business*, February 2008, pp. 68–78; Maureen Farrell, "Wine Workout," *Forbes*, March 30, 2009, pp. 64–65.
67. "Manufacturing Complexity," *Economist: A Survey of Logistics*, June 17, 2006, pp. 6–9.
68. Perry A. Trunick, "Nailing a Niche in Logistics," *Logistics Today*, March 4, 2008.

Chapter 17

1. Ken Romanzi, "Reintroducing the Cranberry to America!" Talk at the Tuck School of Business at Dartmouth, January 7, 2010; "Breakaway Brands: Ocean Spray Tells It Straight from the Bog," *MediaPost*, October 9, 2006; Francis J. Kelly III and Barry Silverstein, *The Breakaway Brand* (New York: McGraw-Hill, 2005).
2. Xueming Luo and Naveen Donthu, "Marketing's Credibility: A Longitudinal Investigation of Marketing Communication Productivity and Shareholder Value," *Journal of Marketing* 70 (October 2006), pp. 70–91.
3. Margaret Coker, "Dubai Pulls Out the Stops—for Naming Metro Stations, Lines Offered as Vehicles," *Wall Street Journal*, August 8, 2008; Linda Childers, "Can't-Escape TV," *Fast Company*, July/August 2008, p. 46; Louise Story, "Anywhere the Eye Can See, It's Likely to See an Ad," *New York Times*, January 15, 2007; Laura Petrecca, "Product Placement—You Can't Escape It," *USA Today*, October 11, 2006.
4. Burt Helm, "Attention-Deficit Advertising," *BusinessWeek*, May 5, 2008, p. 50; "Motorola's 'Say Goodbye' Campaign at Hong Kong Airport," *MobiAD News*, February 20, 2008.
5. Vanessa L. Facenda, "Kimberly-Clark's Paper Trail Leads to Creative Marketing," *Brandweek*, January 14, 2008, p. 11.
6. Stuart Elliott, "Covering Many Bases for a Brand of Blue Jeans," *New York Times*, August 13, 2009; Giselle Tsurulnik, "Gap Finds Right Fit with Mobile for New Jeans Campaign," *Mobile Marketer*, October 5, 2009; "Gap Introduces America's Best-Fitting Premium Jeans," *PRNewswire*, August 13, 2009; Jean-Claude Larreche, "Gap Lacked Momentum, So Rightly Cut TV," *Advertising Age*, June 23, 2008, p. 26.
7. Some of these definitions are adapted from Peter D. Bennett, ed., *Dictionary of Marketing Terms* (Chicago: American Marketing Association, 1995).
8. Tom Duncan and Sandra Moriarty, "How Integrated Marketing Communication's 'Touch Points' Can Operationalize the Service-Dominant Logic," Robert F. Lusch and Stephen L. Vargo, eds., *The Service-Dominant Logic of Marketing: Dialog, Debate, and Directions* (Armonk, NY: M.E. Sharpe, 2006); Tom Duncan, *Principles of Advertising and IMC*, 2nd ed. (New York: McGraw-Hill/Irwin, 2005).
9. Noreen O'Leary, "Mint's Fresh Approach: Marketing on \$700 a Year," *Brandweek*, October 12, 2009, p. 4; Coloribus Global Advertising Archive, www.coloribus.com, December 09, 2010.
10. Theresa Howard, "Multiplatform Ads Clean Up at Cannes," *USA Today*, June 29, 2009, p. 3B; Kate Nettleton, "Tribal DDB Amsterdam's 'Carousel' for Philips Scoops Cannes Lions 2009 Film Grand Prix," *Campaign*, June 29, 2009; Daniel Farey-Jones, "Philips Promotes Home Cinema Range with Online Film Premiere," *Campaign*, February 18, 2010.
11. For an alternate communications model developed specifically for advertising communications, see Barbara B. Stern, "A Revised Communication Model for Advertising: Multiple Dimensions of the Source, the Message, and the Recipient," *Journal of Advertising* (June 1994), pp. 5–15. For some additional perspectives, see Tom Duncan and Sandra E. Morarity, "A Communication-Based Marketing Model for Managing Relationships," *Journal of Marketing* 62 (April 1998), pp. 1–13.
12. Demetrios Vakratsas and Tim Ambler, "How Advertising Works: What Do We Really Know?" *Journal of Marketing* 63 (January 1999), pp. 26–43.
13. This section is based on the excellent text, John R. Rossiter and Larry Percy, *Advertising and Promotion Management*, 2nd ed. (New York: McGraw-Hill, 1997).
14. "GE Gets Smart with Energy Awareness," *Special Advertising Section to Adweek and Brandweek*, October 14, 2009; "GE Plucks an Online Winner with Smart Grid," *Special Advertising Section to Adweek and Brandweek*, October 14, 2009; "Smart Grid," *GE*, <http://ge.ecomagination.com/smartgrid>; "Augmented Reality: Real Meets Virtual," *BizTechTalk*, February 25, 2009.
15. James F. Engel, Roger D. Blackwell, and Paul W. Minard, *Consumer Behavior*, 9th ed. (Fort Worth, TX: Dryden, 2001).
16. John R. Rossiter and Larry Percy, *Advertising and Promotion Management*, 2nd ed. (New York: McGraw-Hill, 1997).
17. James F. Engel, Roger D. Blackwell, and Paul W. Minard, *Consumer Behavior*, 9th ed. (Fort Worth, TX: Dryden, 2001).
18. Ayn E. Crowley and Wayne D. Hoyer, "An Integrative Framework for Understanding Two-Sided Persuasion," *Journal of Consumer Research* 20 (March 1994), pp. 561–74.
19. C. I. Hovland, A. A. Lumsdaine, and F. D. Sheffield, *Experiments on Mass Communication*, vol. 3 (Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1949); Crowley and Hoyer, "An Integrative Framework for Understanding Two-Sided Persuasion." For an alternative viewpoint, see George E. Belch, "The Effects of Message Modality on One- and Two-Sided Advertising Messages," Richard P. Bagozzi and Alice M. Tybout, eds., *Advances in Consumer Research* (Ann Arbor, MI: Association for Consumer Research, 1983), pp. 21–26.
20. Curtis P. Haugtvedt and Duane T. Wegener, "Message Order Effects in Persuasion: An Attitude Strength Perspective," *Journal of Consumer Research* 21 (June 1994), pp. 205–18; H. Rao Unnava, Robert E. Burnkrant, and Sunil Erevelles, "Effects of Presentation Order and Communication Modality on Recall and Attitude," *Journal of Consumer Research* 21 (December 1994), pp. 481–90.
21. Sternthal and Craig, *Consumer Behavior*, pp. 282–84. Sternthal and Craig, *Consumer Behavior: An Information Processing Perspective* (Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice-Hall, 1982), pp. 282–84.

22. Michael R. Solomon, *Consumer Behavior*, 7th ed. (Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2007).
23. Some recent research on humor in advertising, for example, includes: Haseeb Shabbir and Des Thwaites, "The Use of Humor to Mask Deceptive Advertising: It's No Laughing Matter," *Journal of Advertising* 36 (Summer 2007), pp. 75–85; Thomas W. Cline and James J. Kellaris, "The Influence of Humor Strength and Humor Message Relatedness on Ad Memorability: A Dual Process Model," *Journal of Advertising* 36 (Spring 2007), pp. 55–67; H. Shanker Krishnan and Dipankar Chakravarti, "A Process Analysis of the Effects of Humorous Advertising Executions on Brand Claims Memory," *Journal of Consumer Psychology* 13 (2003), pp. 230–45.
24. "Follies," *Advertising Age*, December 14, 2009, p. 20.
25. Rik Pieters and Michel Wedel, "Attention Capture and Transfer in Advertising: Brand, Pictorial, and Text-Size Effects," *Journal of Marketing* 68 (April 2004), pp. 36–50.
26. Herbert C. Kelman and Carl I. Hovland, "Reinstatement of the Communication in Delayed Measurement of Opinion Change," *Journal of Abnormal and Social Psychology* 48 (July 1953), pp. 327–35.
27. David J. Moore, John C. Mowen, and Richard Reardon, "Multiple Sources in Advertising Appeals: When Product Endorsers Are Paid by the Advertising Sponsor," *Journal of the Academy of Marketing Science* 13 (Summer 1994), pp. 234–43.
28. C. E. Osgood and P. H. Tannenbaum, "The Principles of Congruity in the Prediction of Attitude Change," *Psychological Review* 62 (January 1955), pp. 42–55.
29. Brian Morrissey, "Traditional Ads Yield Social Traction," *Adweek*, May 16, 2010.
30. "Face-to-Face Report," American Business Media, January 2010; "John Deere Face-to-Face Campaign Races Past Competition," *Special Advertising Section to Adweek and Brandweek*, October 14, 2009; Gyro HSR, www.gyrohsr.com.
31. Suzanne Vranca, "New to the TV Lineup: A Flat-Panel Teaser LG Uses Ruse of Show to Market Its Screen," *Wall Street Journal*, April 29, 2008.
32. Adapted from G. Maxwell Ule, "A Media Plan for 'Sputnik' Cigarettes," *How to Plan Media Strategy* (American Association of Advertising Agencies, 1957 Regional Convention), pp. 41–52.
33. Thomas C. Kinnear, Kenneth L. Bernhardt, and Kathleen A. Krentler, *Principles of Marketing*, 6th ed. (New York: HarperCollins, 1995).
34. K. Sridhar Moorthy and Scott A. Hawkins, "Advertising Repetition and Quality Perceptions," *Journal of Business Research* 58 (March 2005), pp. 354–60; Amna Kirmani and Akshay R. Rao, "No Pain, No Gain: A Critical Review of the Literature on Signaling Unobservable Product Quality," *Journal of Marketing* 64 (April 2000), pp. 66–79; Amna Kirmani, "The Effect of Perceived Advertising Costs on Brand Perceptions," *Journal of Consumer Research* 17 (September 17, 1990), pp. 160–71; Amna Kirmani and Peter Wright, "Money Talks: Perceived Advertising Expense and Expected Product Quality," *Journal of Consumer Research* 16 (December 1989), pp. 344–53.
35. Demetrios Vakratsas and Tim Ambler, "How Advertising Works: What Do We Really Know?" *Journal of Marketing* 63 (January 1999), pp. 26–43.
36. Levitt, *Industrial Purchasing Behavior: A Study in Communication Effects* (Boston, MA: Harvard University Division of Research, 1965).
37. "Let's Build a Smarter Planet," *Effie Worldwide*, www.effie.org/winners/showcase/2010/; "IBM Smarter Planet Campaign from Ogilvy & Mather Wins Global Effie," *PRNewswire*, June 9, 2010; Jeffrey M. O'Brien, "IBM's Grand Plan to Save the Planet," *Fortune*, April 21, 2009.
38. Prasad A. Naik and Kalyan Raman, "Understanding the Impact of Synergy in Multimedia Communications," *Journal of Marketing Research* 40 (November 2003), pp. 375–88. See also, Prasad A. Naik, Kalyan Raman, and Russell S. Winer, "Planning Marketing-Mix Strategies in the Presence of Interaction Effects," *Marketing Science* 24 (January 2005), pp. 25–34.
39. Scott Neslin, *Sales Promotion*, MSI Relevant Knowledge Series (Cambridge, MA: Marketing Science Institute, 2002).
40. Markus Pfeiffer and Markus Zinnbauer, "Can Old Media Enhance New Media?" *Journal of Advertising Research* (March 2010), pp. 42–49.
41. Ellen Neuborne, "Ads That Actually Sell Stuff," *Business 2.0*, June 2004, p. 78.
42. Sreedhar Madhavaram, Vishag Badrinarayanan, and Robert E. McDonald, "Integrated Marketing Communication (IMC) and Brand Identity as Critical Components of Brand Equity Strategy," *Journal of Advertising* 34 (Winter 2005), pp. 69–80; Mike Reid, Sandra Luxton, and Felix Mavondo, "The Relationship between Integrated Marketing Communication, Market Orientation, and Brand Orientation," *Journal of Advertising* 34 (Winter 2005), pp. 11–23.
43. Don E. Schultz and Heidi Schultz, *IMC, The Next Generation: Five Steps for Delivering Value and Measuring Financial Returns* (New York: McGraw-Hill, 2003); Don E. Shultz, Stanley I. Tannenbaum, and Robert F. Lauterborn, *Integrated Marketing Communications: Putting It Together and Making It Work* (Lincolnwood, IL: NTC Business Books, 1992).
44. Bruce Horovitz, "Super Bowl Marketers Go All Out to Create Hype, Online Buzz," *USA Today*, February 8, 2010.

Chapter 18

1. Dan Sewall, "Old Spice Rolls Out New Ads," *Associated Press*, July 1, 2010; Adam Tschorn, "Old Spice Ad Connects Women to Male Brand with a Wink," *Los Angeles Times*, March 6, 2010; Mary Elizabeth Williams, "Take That, Super Bowl," *Salon.com*, www.salon.com, February 22, 2010.
2. Paul F. Nunes and Jeffrey Merrihue, "The Continuing Power of Mass Advertising," *Sloan Management Review* (Winter 2007), pp. 63–69.

3. Jack Neff, "'Broken' Ad Model Holds Big Advantages for P&G," *Advertising Age*, March 5, 2007.
4. Russell H. Colley, *Defining Advertising Goals for Measured Advertising Results* (New York: Association of National Advertisers, 1961).
5. Wilfred Amaldoss and Chuan He, "Product Variety, Informative Advertising, and Price Competition," *Journal of Marketing Research* 47 (February 2010), pp. 146–56.
6. Dale Buss, "OnStar First Aid," *Brandchannel*, www.brandchannel.com, February 15, 2010; "OnStar Expands TV Campaign Ads Based on Real-Life Stories," *Road & Travel Magazine*, November 5, 2003.
7. "Responses to Comparative Advertising," *Journal of Consumer Research* 32 (March 2006), pp. 530–40; Dhruv Grewal, Sukumar Kavanoor, and James Barnes, "Comparative versus Noncomparative Advertising: A Meta-Analysis," *Journal of Marketing* 61 (October 1997), pp. 1–15; Randall L. Rose, Paul W. Miniard, Michael J. Barone, Kenneth C. Manning, and Brian D. Till, "When Persuasion Goes Undetected: The Case of Comparative Advertising," *Journal of Marketing Research* 30 (August 1993), pp. 315–30.
8. Rajesh Chandy, Gerard J. Tellis, Debbie MacInnis, and Pattana Thaivanich, "What to Say When: Advertising Appeals in Evolving Markets," *Journal of Marketing Research* 38 (November 2001); Gerard J. Tellis, Rajesh Chandy, and Pattana Thaivanich, "Decomposing the Effects of Direct Advertising: Which Brand Works, When, Where, and How Long?" *Journal of Marketing Research* 37 (February 2000), pp. 32–46; Peter J. Danaher, André Bonfrer, and Sanjay Dhar, "The Effect of Competitive Advertising," *Journal of Marketing Research* 45 (April 2008), pp. 211–25; Donald E. Schultz, Dennis Martin, and William P. Brown, *Strategic Advertising Campaigns* (Chicago: Crain Books, 1984), pp. 192–97.
9. Demetrios Vakratsas, Fred M. Feinberg, Frank M. Bass, and Gurusurthy Kalyanaram, "The Shape of Advertising Response Functions Revisited: A Model of Dynamic Probabilistic Thresholds," *Marketing Science* 23 (Winter 2004), pp. 109–19; for an excellent review, see Greg Allenby and Dominique Hanssens, "Advertising Response," Marketing Science Institute, *Special Report*, No. 05-200, 2005.
10. Leonard M. Lodish, Magid Abraham, Stuart Kalmenson, Jeanne Livelsberger, Beth Lubetkin, Bruce Richardson, and Mary Ellen Stevens, "How T.V. Advertising Works: A Meta-Analysis of 389 Real-World Split Cable T.V. Advertising Experiments," *Journal of Marketing Research* 32 (May 1995), pp. 125–39.
11. Greg Allenby and Dominique Hanssens, "Advertising Response," Marketing Science Institute, *Special Report*, No. 05-200, 2005; Jack Neff, "TV Doesn't Sell Package Goods," *Advertising Age*, May 24, 2004, pp. 1, 30.
12. Cleve Langton, "Searching for the Holy Global Ad Grail," *Brandweek*, June 5, 2006, p. 16.
13. Jeff Manning, "Got Milk?" *Associations Now*, July 1, 2006, pp. 56–61; Jeff Manning and Kevin Lane Keller, "Making Advertising Work: How Got Milk? Marketing Stopped a 20-Year Sales Decline," *Marketing Management* (January–February 2003); Jeff Manning, *Got Milk? The Book* (New York: Prima Lifestyles, 1999).
14. Eric Pfanner, "When Consumers Help, Ads Are Free," *New York Times*, June 22, 2009, p. B6; Elisabeth Sullivan, "H. J. Heinz: Consumers Sit in the Director's Chair for Viral Effort," *Marketing News*, February 10, 2008, p. 10; Louise Story, "The High Price of Creating Free Ads," *New York Times*, May 26, 2007; Laura Petrecca, "Madison Avenue Wants You! (or at Least Your Videos)," *USA Today*, June 21, 2007; Eric Pfanner, "Leave It to the Professionals? Hey, Let Consumers Make Their Own Ads," *New York Times*, August 4, 2006.
15. Ruth Lamperd, "Vegemite Product Renamed Vegemite Cheesybite after iSnack 2.0 was Dumped," *Herald Sun*, October 7, 2009; "Follies," *Advertising Age*, December 14, 2009, p. 20.
16. Daniel P. Amos, "How I Did It: Aflac's CEO Explains How He Fell for the Duck," *Harvard Business Review*, January–February 2010; Stuart Elliott, "Not Daffy or Donald, But Still Aflac's Rising Star," *New York Times*, April 22, 2009; Kathleen Sampey, "Q&A: Aflac CMO Herbert," *Adweek*, October 16, 2006; Ron Insana, "Insurance Business Just Ducky for AFLAC," *USA Today*, July 5, 2005; Chad Bray, "If It Quacks, It May Be an Insurance Ad," *Wall Street Journal*, April 2, 2003; Stuart Elliott, "Why a Duck? Because It Sells Insurance," *New York Times*, June 24, 2002.
17. "Scarborough Writes a Refreshing Headline for the Newspaper Industry: Three-Quarters of Adults Are Reading Newspapers, in Print or Online," *Scarborough Research*, www.scarborough.com; Joseph Plambeck, "Newspaper Circulation Falls Nearly 9%," *New York Times*, April 26, 2010.
18. Jeremy Mullman, "Breaking with Bottle Fires Up Absolut Sales," *Advertising Age*, February 18, 2008; Andrew McMains, "'Absolut World' Debuts," *Adweek*, April 27, 2007; Stuart Elliott, "In an 'Absolut World,' a Vodka Could Use the Same Ads for More than 25 Years," *New York Times*, April 27, 2007; Theresa Howard, "Absolut Gets into Spirit of Name Play with New Ads," *USA Today*, January 16, 2006.
19. "The Infinite Dial 2009," *Arbitron*, April 2009.
20. "Motel 6 Ad Earns Grand Prize at Radio Mercury Awards," Motel 6, www.motel6.com, July 1, 2009; "Motel 6 Receives Hermes and Silver GALAXY Awards for 2002 Advertising Campaigns," Business Editors/Travel Writers, *Business Wire*, November 22, 2002.
21. Kim Bartel Sheehan, *Controversies in Contemporary Advertising* (Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage, 2003).
22. Sarah Hills, "McNeil and Sugar Association Settle Splenda Dispute," *Food Navigator-usa.com*, www.foodnavigator-usa.com, November 18, 2008; James P. Miller, "Bitter Sweets Fight Ended," *Chicago*

- Tribune*, May 12, 2007; Avery Johnson, "How Sweet It Isn't: Maker of Equal Says Ads for J&J's Splenda Misled; Chemistry Lesson for Jurors," *Wall Street Journal*, April 6, 2007. For a discussion of the possible role of corrective advertising, see Peter Darke, Laurence Ashworth, and Robin J. B. Ritchie, "Damage from Corrective Advertising: Causes and Cures," *Journal of Marketing* 72 (November 2008), pp. 81–97.
23. For further reading, see Dorothy Cohen, *Legal Issues in Marketing Decision Making* (Cincinnati, OH: South-Western, 1995).
 24. Jim Kavanagh, "Ad Council Gets Creative to Get Your Attention," *CNN*, www.cnn.com, September 2, 2009.
 25. Schultz et al., *Strategic Advertising Campaigns* (Chicago: NTC/Contemporary Publishing Company, September 1994), p. 340.
 26. Prashant Malaviya, "The Moderating Influence of Advertising Context on Ad Repetition Effects: The Role of Amount and Type of Elaboration," *Journal of Consumer Research* 34 (June 2007), pp. 32–40.
 27. Elena Malykhina, "GEICO Poses 'Rhetorical Questions,'" *Brandweek*, December 28, 2009; Adam Armbruster, "GEICO Takes Varied Roads to Consumers," *Television Week*, March 12, 2007, p. 10; Rob Walker, "Pop-Culture Evolution," *New York Times Magazine*, April 15, 2007; *Yahoo Finance*, <http://biz.yahoo.com/ic/10/10616.html>.
 28. Sam Jaffe, "Easy Riders," *American Demographics*, March 2004, pp. 20–23.
 29. Max Chafkin, "Ads and Atmospherics," *Inc.*, February 2007.
 30. Stephanie Clifford, "Billboards That Look Back," *New York Times*, May 31, 2008.
 31. Abbey Klaassen and Andrew Hampp, "Inside Outdoor's Digital Makeover," *Advertising Age: Creativity*, June 14, 2010, p. 5.
 32. Abbey Klaassen and Andrew Hampp, "Inside Outdoor's Digital Makeover," *Advertising Age: Creativity*, June 14, 2010, p. 5.
 33. Jon Fine, "Where Are Advertisers? At the Movies," *BusinessWeek*, May 25, 2009, pp. 65–66; "Advertisers Go Outside to Play," *AdweekMedia*, March 9, 2009, p. 1; Zack O'Malley Greenburg, "Take Your Brand for a Ride," *Forbes*, March 2, 2009, p. 67.
 34. Jeff Pelling, "New Commercial Twist in Corporate Restrooms," *San Francisco Chronicle*, October 6, 1986.
 35. Brian Steinberg and Suzanne Vranica, "Prime-Time TV's New Guest Stars: Products," *Wall Street Journal*, January 13, 2004; Michael A. Wiles and Anna Danielova, "The Worth of Product Placement in Successful Films: An Event Study Analysis," *Journal of Marketing* 73 (July 2009), pp. 44–63; Siva K. Balasubramanian, James Karrh, and Hemant Patwardhan, "Audience Response to Product Placements: An Integrative Framework and Future Research Agenda," *Journal of Advertising* 35 (2006), pp. 115–41; Cristel A. Russell and Barbara Stern, "Consumers, Characters, and Products: A Balance Model of Sitcom Product Placement Effects," *Journal of Advertising* 35 (2006), pp. 7–18; Cristel A. Russell and Michael Belch, "A Managerial Investigation into the Product Placement Industry," *Journal of Advertising Research* 45 (2005), pp. 73–92.
 36. Stephanie Clifford, "Product Placements Acquire a Life of Their Own on Shows," *New York Times*, July 14, 2008; "FCC Opens Inquiry into Stealthy TV Product Placement," *Associated Press*, June 26, 2008; Chris Reidy, "Staples Gets an Office Encore," *Boston Globe*, November 4, 2006; James L. Johnston, "Branded Entertainment: The Old Is New Again and More Complicated Than Ever," *Journal of Sponsorship* 2 (February 2009), pp. 170–75.
 37. Popai, www.popai.com, accessed August 22, 2010.
 38. Ram Bezawada, S. Balachander, P. K. Kannan, and Venkatesh Shankar, "Cross-Category Effects of Aisle and Display Placements: A Spatial Modeling Approach and Insights," *Journal of Marketing* 73 (May 2009), pp. 99–117; Pierre Chandon, J. Wesley Hutchinson, Eric T. Bradlow, and Scott H. Young, "Does In-Store Marketing Work? Effects of the Number and Position of Shelf Facings on Brand Attention and Evaluation at the Point of Purchase," *Journal of Marketing* 73 (November 2009), pp. 1–17.
 39. Bill Yackey, "Walmart Reveals 18-Month Results for SMART Network," *Digital Signage Today*, February 23, 2010; Mark Friedman, "Walmart's New In-Store Ads Turning Heads," *Arkansas Business*, September 22, 2008; Laura Petrecca, "Wal-Mart TV Sells Marketers Flexibility," *USA Today*, March 29, 2007.
 40. Daniel Terdiman, "McDonald's Is Lead Sponsor of Olympics-Themed ARG, 'The Lost Ring,'" *CNET News*, March 6, 2008; Stephanie Clifford, "An Online Game So Mysterious Its Famous Sponsor Is Hidden," *New York Times*, April 1, 2008; Ben Arnoldy, "Wisdom of the Crowd Triumphs in Alternate Reality Games," *Christian Science Monitor*, March 26, 2008.
 41. Brian Steinberg, "'Sunday Night Football' Remains Costliest TV Show," *Advertising Age*, October 26, 2009.
 42. "4A's Television Production Cost Survey," *4A's*, www.aaa.org, December 15, 2009.
 43. For more on other media context effects, see Michael A. Kamins, Lawrence J. Marks, and Deborah Skinner, "Television Commercial Evaluation in the Context of Program-Induced Mood: Congruency versus Consistency Effects," *Journal of Advertising*, June 1991, pp. 1–14; see also, Jing Wang and Bobby J. Calder, "Media Transportation and Advertising," *Journal of Consumer Research* 33 (September 2006), pp. 151–62.
 44. Kenneth R. Lord, Myung-Soo Lee, and Paul L. Sauer, "Program Context Antecedents of Attitude toward Radio Commercials," *Journal of the Academy of Marketing Science* 13 (Winter 1994), pp. 3–15; Kenneth R. Lord and Robert E. Burnkrant, "Attention versus Distraction: The Interactive Effect of Program

- Involvement and Attentional Devices on Commercial Processing," *Journal of Advertising* (March 1993), pp. 47–60.
45. Roland T. Rust, *Advertising Media Models: A Practical Guide* (Lexington, MA: Lexington Books, 1986).
 46. Hani I. Mesak, "An Aggregate Advertising Pulsing Model with Wearout Effects," *Marketing Science* 11 (Summer 1992), pp. 310–26; Fred M. Feinberg, "Pulsing Policies for Aggregate Advertising Models," *Marketing Science* 11 (Summer 1992), pp. 221–34.
 47. David B. Montgomery and Alvin J. Silk, "Estimating Dynamic Effects of Market Communications Expenditures," *Management Science* (June 1972), pp. 485–501; Kristian S. Palda, *The Measurement of Cumulative Advertising Effect* (Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 1964), p. 87.
 48. Gerard J. Tellis, Rajesh K. Chandy, and Pattana Thaivanich, "Which Ad Works, When, Where, and How Often? Modeling the Effects of Direct Television Advertising," *Journal of Marketing Research* 37 (February 2000), pp. 32–46; Ajay Kalra and Ronald C. Goodstein, "The Impact of Advertising Positioning Strategies on Consumer Price Sensitivity," *Journal of Marketing Research* (May 1998), pp. 210–24; Anil Kaul and Dick R. Wittink, "Empirical Generalizations about the Impact of Advertising on Price Sensitivity and Price," *Marketing Science* 14 (Summer 1995), pp. G151–60; David Walker and Tony M. Dubitsky, "Why Liking Matters," *Journal of Advertising Research*, May–June 1994, pp. 9–18; Abhilasha Mehta, "How Advertising Response Modeling (ARM) Can Increase Ad Effectiveness," *Journal of Advertising Research* (May–June 1994), pp. 62–74; John Deighton, Caroline Henderson, and Scott Neslin, "The Effects of Advertising on Brand Switching and Repeat Purchasing," *Journal of Marketing Research* 31 (February 1994), pp. 28–43; Karin Holstius, "Sales Response to Advertising," *International Journal of Advertising* 9 (September 1990), pp. 38–56.
 49. Nigel Hollis, "The Future of Tracking Studies," *Admap*, October 2004, pp. 151–53.
 50. From Robert C. Blattberg and Scott A. Neslin, *Sales Promotion: Concepts, Methods, and Strategies* (Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 1990). This text provides a detailed, analytical treatment of sales promotion. An comprehensive review of academic work on sales promotions can be found in Scott Neslin, "Sales Promotion," Bart Weitz and Robin Wensley, eds., *Handbook of Marketing* (London: Sage, 2002), pp. 310–38.
 51. Kusum Ailawadi, Karen Gedenk, and Scott A. Neslin, "Heterogeneity and Purchase Event Feedback in Choice Models: An Empirical Analysis with Implications for Model Building," *International Journal of Research in Marketing* 16 (September 1999), pp. 177–98. See also, Kusum L. Ailawadi, Karen Gedenk, Christian Lutzky, and Scott A. Neslin, "Decomposition of the Sales Impact of Promotion-Induced Stockpiling," *Journal of Marketing Research* 44 (August 2007); Eric T. Anderson and Duncan Simester, "The Long-Run Effects of Promotion Depth on New versus Established Customers: Three Field Studies," *Marketing Science* 23 (Winter 2004), pp. 4–20; Luc Wathieu, A. V. Muthukrishnan, and Bart J. Bronnenberg, "The Asymmetric Effect of Discount Retraction on Subsequent Choice," *Journal of Consumer Research* 31 (December 2004), pp. 652–65; Praveen Kopalle, Carl F. Mela, and Lawrence Marsh, "The Dynamic Effect of Discounting on Sales: Empirical Analysis and Normative Pricing Implications," *Marketing Science* 18 (Summer 1999), pp. 317–32.
 52. Harald J. Van Heerde, Sachin Gupta, and Dick Wittink, "Is 75% of the Sales Promotion Bump Due to Brand Switching? No, Only 33% Is," *Journal of Marketing Research* 40 (November 2003), pp. 481–91; Harald J. Van Heerde, Peter S. H. Leeflang, and Dick R. Wittink, "The Estimation of Pre- and Postpromotion Dips with Store-Level Scanner Data," *Journal of Marketing Research* 37 (August 2000), pp. 383–95.
 53. For a good summary of the research on whether promotion erodes the consumer franchise of leading brands, see Blattberg and Neslin, "Sales Promotion: The Long and Short of It," *Marketing Letters* 1 (December 2004); See also, "Stephanie Rosenbloom, "In Recession, Even the Holdouts Use Coupons," *New York Times*, September 24, 2009. For a related topic, see Michael J. Barone and Tirthankar Roy, "Does Exclusivity Pay Off? Exclusive Price Promotions and Consumer Response," *Journal of Marketing* 74 (March 2010), pp. 121–32.
 54. Robert George Brown, "Sales Response to Promotions and Advertising," *Journal of Advertising Research* (August 1974), pp. 36–37. Also see Kamel Jedidi, Carl F. Mela, and Sunil Gupta, "Managing Advertising and Promotion for Long-Run Profitability," *Marketing Science* 18 (Winter 1999), pp. 1–22; Carl F. Mela, Sunil Gupta, and Donald R. Lehmann, "The Long-Term Impact of Promotion and Advertising on Consumer Brand Choice," *Journal of Marketing Research* 34 (May 1997), pp. 248–61; Purushottam Papatla and Lakshman Krishnamurti, "Measuring the Dynamic Effects of Promotions on Brand Choice," *Journal of Marketing Research* 33 (February 1996), pp. 20–35.
 55. "2010 REGGIE Awards Shopper Marketing: P&G Gain—Project Gainiac," *Promotion Marketing Association*, www.pmalink.org.
 56. Magid M. Abraham and Leonard M. Lodish, "Getting the Most out of Advertising and Promotion," *Harvard Business Review*, May–June 1990, pp. 50–60. See also, Shuba Srinivasan, Koen Pauwels, Dominique Hanssens, and Marnik Dekimpe, "Do Promotions Benefit Manufacturers, Retailers, or Both?" *Management Science* 50 (May 2004), pp. 617–29.
 57. Leonard M. Lodish, Magid Abraham, Stuart Kalmenson, Jeanne Livelsberger, Beth Lubetkin, Bruce Richardson, and Mary Ellen Stevens, "How T.V. Advertising Works: A Meta-Analysis of 389 Real World

- Split Cable T.V. Advertising Experiments,” *Journal of Marketing Research* 32 (May 1995), pp. 125–39.
58. Rebecca J. Slotegraaf and Koen Pauwels, “The Impact of Brand Equity Innovation on the Long-Term Effectiveness of Promotions,” *Journal of Marketing Research* 45 (June 2008), pp. 293–306.
 59. For a model for setting sales promotions objectives, see David B. Jones, “Setting Promotional Goals: A Communications Relationship Model,” *Journal of Consumer Marketing* 11 (1994), pp. 38–49.
 60. Kusum L. Ailawadi, Bari A. Harlam, Jacques Cesar, and David Trounce, “Promotion Profitability for a Retailer: The Role of Promotion, Brand, Category, and Store Characteristics,” *Journal of Marketing Research* 43 (November 2006), pp. 518–36.
 61. Emily Bryson York and Natalie Zmuda, “Sampling: The New Mass Media,” *Advertising Age*, May 12, 2008, pp. 3, 56.
 62. Sarah Skidmore, “Coupons Evolve for the Digital Age,” *Associated Press*, August 30, 2009; “20 Most Popular Comparison Shopping Websites,” *eBizMBA*, www.ebizmba.com, June 2010.
 63. Miguel Gomez, Vithala Rao, and Edward McLaughlin, “Empirical Analysis of Budget and Allocation of Trade Promotions in the U.S. Supermarket Industry,” *Journal of Marketing Research* 44 (August 2007); Norris Bruce, Preyas S. Desai, and Richard Staelin, “The Better They Are, the More They Give: Trade Promotions of Consumer Durables,” *Journal of Marketing Research* 42 (February 2005), pp. 54–66.
 64. Kusum L. Ailawadi and Bari Harlam, “An Empirical Analysis of the Determinants of Retail Margins: The Role of Store Brand Share,” *Journal of Marketing* 68 (January 2004), pp. 147–66; Kusum L. Ailawadi, “The Retail Power-Performance Conundrum: What Have We Learned?” *Journal of Retailing* 77 (Fall 2001), pp. 299–318; Paul W. Farris and Kusum L. Ailawadi, “Retail Power: Monster or Mouse?” *Journal of Retailing* (Winter 1992), pp. 351–69; Koen Pauwels, “How Retailer and Competitor Decisions Drive the Long-Term Effectiveness of Manufacturer Promotions,” *Journal of Retailing* 83 (2007), pp. 364–90.
 65. James Bandler, “The Shadowy Business of Diversion,” *Fortune*, August 17, 2009, p. 65; Rajiv Lal, John Little, and J. M. Vilas-Boas, “A Theory of Forward Buying, Merchandising, and Trade Deals,” *Marketing Science* 15 (Winter 1996), pp. 21–37.
 66. IBIS World USA, www.ibisworld.com; Noah Lim, Michael J. Ahearne, and Sung H. Ham, “Designing Sales Contests: Does the Prize Structure Matter?” *Journal of Marketing Research* 46 (June 2009), pp. 356–71.
 67. “Kraft’s Oreo Takes Super Reggie,” *Promo*, March 12, 2009; Elaine Wong, “How Kraft’s Double Stuf Oreo Launch Trumped Expectations,” *Brandweek*, August 31, 2009; “Oreo Double Stuf Racing League (DSRL),” *Promotion Marketing Association*, www.pmalink.org.
 68. Kurt H. Schaffir and H. George Trenten, *Marketing Information Systems* (New York: AMACOM, 1973), p. 81.
 69. Joe A. Dodson, Alice M. Tybout, and Brian Sternthal, “Impact of Deals and Deal Retraction on Brand Switching,” *Journal of Marketing Research* 15 (February 1978), pp. 72–81.
 70. *IEG Sponsorship Report*, as quoted in “Sponsorship Spending Revised, Growth Cut in Half: IEG,” *Promo*, June 18, 2009.
 71. Philip Kotler, “Atmospherics as a Marketing Tool,” *Journal of Retailing* (Winter 1973–1974), pp. 48–64.
 72. Kathleen Kerwin, “When the Factory Is a Theme Park,” *BusinessWeek*, May 3, 2004, p. 94; Vanessa O’Connell, “‘You-Are-There’ Advertising,” *Wall Street Journal*, August 5, 2002.
 73. Jeff Borden, “Tornado: Experiential Marketing Takes the Industry by Storm in 2008,” *Marketing News*, January 15, 2008, pp. 23–26.
 74. Michael Schmelling, “Creative Mischief,” *Fast Company*, November 2008, pp. 134–38; “GE Profile Inflatable Product Replicas Hit Times Square,” *Landmark Creations*, www.landmarkcreations.com; Laurie Sullivan, “GE Ads Show How to Lighten the Laundry Load,” *Marketing Daily*, August 27, 2008.
 75. “Personal Care Marketers: Who Does What,” *IEG Sponsorship Report*, April 16, 2007, p. 4.
 76. Bettina Cornwell, Michael S. Humphreys, Angela M. Maguire, Clinton S. Weeks, and Cassandra Tellegen, “Sponsorship-Linked Marketing: The Role of Articulation in Memory,” *Journal of Consumer Research* 33 (December 2006), pp. 312–21.
 77. Hilary Cassidy, “So You Want to Be an Olympic Sponsor?” *Brandweek*, November 7, 2005, pp. 24–28.
 78. “Brands Suit Up for ‘Iron Man 2,’” *Adweek*, May 14, 2010.
 79. “BB&T Continues Sponsorship with Clint Bowyer, Richard Childress Racing,” *SceneDaily*, January 14, 2010; “BB&T Puts Name on New Winston-Salem Ballpark,” *Winston-Salem Journal*, February 24, 2010; “Bank’s New Department, Deals Reflect Elevated Sponsorship Status,” *IEG Sponsorship Report*, April 16, 2007, pp. 1, 8.
 80. The Association of National Advertisers has a useful source: *Event Marketing: A Management Guide*, which is available at www.ana.net/bookstore.
 81. T. Bettina Cornwell, Clinton S. Weeks, and Donald P. Roy, “Sponsorship-Linked Marketing: Opening the Black Box,” *Journal of Advertising* 34 (Summer 2005).
 82. Constantine von Hoffman, “Buying Up the Bleachers,” *Brandweek*, February 19, 2007, pp. 18–21.
 83. William L. Shankin and John Kuzma, “Buying That Sporting Image,” *Marketing Management* (Spring 1992), pp. 65.
 84. B. Joseph Pine and James H. Gilmore, *The Experience Economy: Work Is Theatre and Every Business a Stage* (Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1999).
 85. “2006 Experiential Marketing Study,” *Jack Morton*, www.jackmorton.com.

86. "Do We Have a Story for You!" *Economist*, January 21, 2006, pp. 57–58; Al Ries and Laura Ries, *The Fall of Advertising and the Rise of PR* (New York: HarperCollins, 2002).
87. "PRWeek Campaign of the Year," *PRWeek*, March 5, 2009; "Man Lives in IKEA," *Ketchum*, www.ketchum.com; "Man Lives in NYC IKEA Store," *Associated Press*, January 8, 2008.
88. "Ketchum and Dreyer's Win PRWeek Campaign of the Year Award," *PRNewswire*, March 12, 2010; "Dreyer's Slow Churned Dishes Out a Taste of Recovery with the Debut of 'Red, White and No More Blues' Flavor," *PRNewswire*, June 23, 2009; "Beat the Blues with a Taste of Recovery," *CLIO 2010*, www.clioawards.com.
89. Arthur M. Merims, "Marketing's Stepchild: Product Publicity," *Harvard Business Review*, November–December 1972, pp. 111–12. Also see Katherine D. Paine, "There Is a Method for Measuring PR," *Marketing News*, November 6, 1987, p. 5.

Chapter 19

1. Elaine Wong, "Pepsi's Refresh Project Drives Social Buzz," *Brandweek*, June 9, 2010; Stuart Elliott, "Pepsi Invites the Public to Do Good," *New York Times*, February 1, 2010; Suzanne Vranica, "Pepsi Benches Its Drinks," *Wall Street Journal*, December 17, 2009.
2. The terms *direct-order marketing* and *direct-relationship marketing* were suggested as subsets of direct marketing by Stan Rapp and Tom Collins in *The Great Marketing Turnaround* (Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 1990).
3. Ran Kivetz and Itamar Simonson, "The Idiosyncratic Fit Heuristic: Effort Advantage as a Determinant of Consumer Response to Loyalty Programs," *Journal of Marketing Research* 40 (November 2003), pp. 454–67; Ran Kivetz and Itamar Simonson, "Earning the Right to Indulge: Effort as a Determinant of Customer Preferences toward Frequency Program Rewards," *Journal of Marketing Research* 39 (May 2002), pp. 155–70.
4. www.the-dma.org homepage
5. L.L. Bean, www.llbean.com.
6. Stan Rapp and Thomas L. Collins, *Maximarketing* (New York: McGraw-Hill, 1987).
7. www.dma-echo.org; www.yellowtreehouse.co.nz; www.ameawards.com.
8. "DMA Releases 2010 Response Rate Trend Report," *Direct Marketing Association*, www.the-dma.org, June 15, 2010.
9. Bob Stone and Ron Jacobs, *Successful Direct Marketing Methods*, 8th ed. (New York: McGraw-Hill, 2007).
10. Edward L. Nash, *Direct Marketing: Strategy, Planning, Execution*, 4th ed. (New York: McGraw-Hill, 2000).
11. The *average customer longevity* (N) is related to the *customer retention rate* (CR). Suppose the company retains 80 percent of its customers each year. Then the average customer longevity is given by:

$$N = 1/(1 - CR) = 1/.2 = 5 \text{ years.}$$
12. "MCM 100," *Multi Channel Merchant*, www.multichannelmerchant.com, July 2009.
13. "Industry Overview: Internet and Catalog Retailers," *Hoovers*, www.hoovers.com, accessed August 22, 2010.
14. "Biennial Report to Congress: Pursuant to the Do Not Call Registry Fee Extension Act of 2007," *Federal Trade Commission*, www.ftc.gov, December 2009.
15. Charles Duhigg, "Telemarketing Thieves Sharpen Their Focus on the Elderly," *New York Times*, May 20, 2007.
16. Tony Case, "Growing Up," *Interactive Quarterly*, April 19, 2004, pp. 32–34.
17. For example, see André Bonfrer and Xavier Drèze, "Real-Time Evaluation of E-mail Campaign Performance," *Marketing Science* 28 (March–April 2009), pp. 251–63.
18. Kenneth C. Wilbur and Yi Zhu, "Click Fraud," *Marketing Science* 28 (March–April 2009), pp. 293–308.
19. Ellen Byron, "Estée Lauder Tests Web-Ad Waters," *Wall Street Journal*, September 19, 2006.
20. Asim Ansari and Carl F. Mela, "E-Customization," *Journal of Marketing Research* 40 (May 2003), pp. 131–45.
21. Daniel Michaels and J. Lynn Lunsford, "Ad-Sales Woes Likely to Continue," *Wall Street Journal*, December 4, 2006; Jack Neff, "Axe Cuts Past Competitors, Claims Market Lead," *Advertising Age*, May 14, 2006; Byron Acohido, "Rich Media Enriching PC Ads," *USA Today*, February 25, 2004.
22. Stuart Elliott, "Letting Consumers Control Marketing: Priceless," *New York Times*, October 9, 2006; Elizabeth Holmes, "On MySpace, Millions of Users Make 'Friends' with Ads," *Wall Street Journal*, August 7, 2006; "2009 Gold Effie Winner: 'Whopper Freakout,'" *Effie Awards*, *Effie Worldwide*, www.effie.org.
23. Allen P. Adamson, *Brand Digital* (New York: Palgrave Macmillan, 2008).
24. John R. Hauser, Glen L. Urban, Guilherme Liberali, and Michael Braun, "Website Morphing," *Marketing Science* 28 (March–April 2009), pp. 202–23; Peter J. Danaher, Guy W. Mullarkey, and Skander Essegaier, "Factors Affecting Web Site Visit Duration: A Cross-Domain Analysis," *Journal of Marketing Research* 43 (May 2006), pp. 182–94; Philip Kotler, *According to Kotler* (New York: American Management Association, 2005).
25. Jeffrey F. Rayport and Bernard J. Jaworski, *e-commerce* (New York: McGraw-Hill, 2001), p. 116.
26. Bob Tedeschi, "E-Commerce Report," *New York Times*, June 24, 2002.
27. Jan-Benedict E. M. Steenkamp and Inge Geyskens, "How Country Characteristics Affect the Perceived Value of Web Sites," *Journal of Marketing* 70 (July 2006), pp. 136–50.
28. Jessi Hempel, "The Online Numbers Game," *Fortune*, September 3, 2007, p. 18.

29. Julia Angwin and Tom McGinty, "Sites Feed Personal Details to New Tracking Industry," *Wall Street Journal*, July 31, 2010.
30. *eMarketer*, www.emarketer.com, May 2010.
31. Emily Steel, "Marketers Take Search Ads Beyond Search Engines," *Wall Street Journal*, January 19, 2009.
32. Paula Andruss, "How to Win the Bidding Wars," *Marketing News*, April 1, 2008, p. 28; "Jefferson Graham, "To Drive Traffic to Your Site, You Need to Give Good Directions," *USA Today*, June 23, 2008.
33. Peter J. Danaher, Janghyuk Lee, and Laoucine Kerbache, "Optimal Internet Media Selection," *Marketing Science* 29 (March–April 2010), pp. 336–47; Puneet Manchanda, Jean-Pierre Dubé, Khim Yong Goh, and Pradeep K. Chintagunta, "The Effects of Banner Advertising on Internet Purchasing," *Journal of Marketing Research* 43 (February 2006), pp. 98–108.
34. Brian Morrissey, "Big Money Bet on Display Ad Tech," *Adweek*, August 1, 2010; Brian Morrissey, "Beefing Up Banner Ads," *Adweek NEXT*, February 15, 2010, pp. 10–11; Robert D. Hof, "The Squeeze on Online Ads," *BusinessWeek*, March 2, 2009, pp. 48–49; Emily Steel, "Web Sites Debate Best Values for Advertising Dollars," *Wall Street Journal*, August 13, 2009, p. B7.
35. Elisabeth Lewin, "Podcast Audience Growing Faster Than Podcast Advertising," *Podcasting News*, www.podcastingnews.com, May 13, 2009.
36. Natalie Zmuda, "How E-mail Became a Direct-Marketing Rock Star in Recession," *Advertising Age*, May 11, 2009, p. 27.
37. Piet Levy, "An E-motional Call to Action," *Marketing News*, April 30, 2010, p. 8.
38. Roger Cheng, "Mobile Ads Make Gains, But Pace Slows Sharply," *Wall Street Journal*, April 7, 2009; Mark Walsh, "Gartner: Mobile Advertising to Grow 74 percent In 2009," *MediaPost*, August 31, 2009; Amol Sharma, "Companies Vie for Ad Dollars on Mobile Web," *Wall Street Journal*, January 17, 2007; "Mobile Advertising: The Next Big Thing," *Economist*, October 7, 2007, pp. 73–74.
39. Giselle Tsurulnik, "Bank of America Uses Mobile Banners to Drive App Downloads," *Mobile Marketer*, September 4, 2009; Rita Chang, "Consumer Control Brings Brand Loyalty," *Advertising Age*, March 30, 2009, p. 26; Dan Butcher, "Bank of America Campaign Targets Students for Mobile Banking," *Mobile Marketer*, August 28, 2008; Mickey Alam Khan, "Bank of America Surpasses 1M Mobile Banking Customers," *Mobile Marketer*, June 13, 2008.
40. Brian Morrissey, "2009 Really Isn't the Year of Mobile. Here's Why," *Brandweek*, November 16, 2009, p. 6; Douglas MacMillan, Peter Burrows, and Spencer E. Ante, "The App Economy," *BusinessWeek*, November 2, 2009, pp. 44–49.
41. "VW Set for Launch in 8 Months," *WorldCarFans.com*, www.worldcarfans.com, March 20, 2007; Eleftheria Parpis, "Volkswagen's Public Polling Pays Off," *Adweek*, May 19, 2008; Andrew Grill, "Volkswagen Tigan Mobile Advertising Case Study," *London Calling*, www.londoncalling.mobi, May 20, 2009.
42. Peter DaSilva, "Cellphone in New Role: Loyalty Card," *New York Times*, May 31, 2010.
43. Diana Ransom, "When the Customer Is in the Neighborhood," *Wall Street Journal*, May 17, 2010.
44. Don Clark and Nick Wingfield, "Intel, Microsoft Offer Smart Sign Technology," *Wall Street Journal*, January 12, 2010; Andrew Lavalley, "Unilever to Test Mobile Coupons in Trial at Supermarket, Cellphones Will Be the Medium for Discount Offers," *Wall Street Journal*, May 29, 2009; Bob Tedeschi, "Phone Smart Cents-Off Coupons and Other Special Deals, via Your Cellphone," *New York Times*, December 17, 2008.
45. Piet Levy, "Set Your Sites on Mobile," *Marketing News*, April 30, 2010, p.6; Tom Lowry, "Pandora: Unleashing Mobile-Phone Ads," *BusinessWeek*, June 1, 2009, pp. 52–53.
46. Elisabeth Sullivan, "The Tao of Mobile Marketing," *Marketing News*, April 30, 2010, pp. 16–20.
47. Loretta Chao, "Cell Phone Ads Are Easier Pitch in China Interactive Campaigns," *Wall Street Journal*, January 4, 2007.
48. Louise Story, "What We Talk About When We Talk About Brands," *New York Times*, November 24, 2006.
49. Robert V. Kozinets, Kristine de Valck, Andrea C. Wojnicki, and Sarah J. S. Wilner, "Networked Narratives: Understanding Word-of-Mouth Marketing in Online Communities," *Journal of Marketing* 74 (March 2010), pp. 71–89; David Godes and Dina Mayzlin, "Firm-Created Word-of-Mouth Communication: Evidence from a Field Test," *Marketing Science* 28 (July–August 2009), pp. 721–39.
50. Jon Swartz, "Small Firms Dive Into Social Media," *USA Today*, July 22, 2010, p. 3B.
51. Reena Jane, "How Intuit Makes a Social Network Pay," *Bloomberg BusinessWeek*, July 2, 2009; Justin Smith, "Intuit's 'Super Status Contest' Aims for Product Placement in Facebook Status Updates," *Inside Facebook*, www.insidefacebook.com, January 29, 2009; Christen Wegner, "How Intuit Stays Relevant Using Social Media," *KyleLacey.com*, www.kylelacy.com, March 3, 2010; Jon Swartz, "More Marketers Sign on to Social Media," *USA Today*, August 28, 2009, p. 1B.
52. *Effie Awards*, www.effie.org/downloads/2009_winners_list.pdf.
53. Heather Green, "It Takes a Web Village," *BusinessWeek*, September 4, 2006, p. 66; Paul Dwyer, *Measuring the Value of Word of Mouth and Its Impact in Consumer Communities*, MSI Report No. 06-118, *Marketing Science Institute*, Cambridge, MA.; Kelly K. Spors, "The Customer Knows Best," *Wall Street Journal*, July 13, 2009, p. R5.
54. Claire Cain Miller, "The Sweet Spot," *Forbes*, April 23, 2007, p. 41.
55. For an academic discussion of chat rooms, recommendation sites, and customer review sections

- online, see Dina Mayzlin, "Promotional Chat on the Internet," *Marketing Science* 25 (March–April 2006), pp. 155–63; and Judith Chevalier and Dina Mayzlin, "The Effect of Word of Mouth on Sales: Online Book Reviews," *Journal of Marketing Research* 43 (August 2006), pp. 345–54.
56. Stephen Baker, "Looking for a Blog in a Haystack," *BusinessWeek*, July 25, 2006, p. 38.
 57. Heather Green, "The Big Shots of Blogdom," *BusinessWeek*, May 7, 2007; TreeHugger, www.treehugger.com/about.
 58. Kim Hart, "Angry Customers Use Web to Shame Firms," *Washington Post*, July 5, 2006.
 59. For a thorough review of relevant academic literature, see Christophe Van Den Bulte and Stefan Wuyts, *Social Networks and Marketing* (Marketing Science Institute Relevant Knowledge Series, Cambridge, MA, 2007), and for some practical considerations, see "A World of Connections: A Special Report on Social Networking," *Economist*, January 30, 2010.
 60. Allen Adamson, "No Contest: Twitter and Facebook Can Both Play a Role in Branding," www.forbes.com, May 6, 2009.
 61. "Profiting From Friendship," *Economist*, January 30, 2010, pp. 9–12.
 62. "A Peach of Opportunity," *Economist*, January 30, 2010, pp. 9–12.
 63. Claire Cain Miller, "The New Back Fence," *Forbes*, April 7, 2008; CafeMom, www.cafemom.com/about.
 64. Michael Learmonth and Rupal Parekh, "How Influential Are Angry Bloggers? Ask Johnson & Johnson," *Financial Week*, November 19, 2008; Seth Godin, "We Feel Your Pain," *Seth's Blog*, November 17, 2008; Jim Edwards, "J&J Triggers Mommy War With Motrin 'Anti-Baby Sling' Ad," www.bnet.com, November 17, 2008.
 65. Stephen Baker, "Beware Social Media Snake Oil," *Bloomberg BusinessWeek*, December 14, 2009, pp. 48–51.
 66. Ralf van der Lans, Gerrit van Bruggen, Jehoshua Eliashberg, Berend Wierenga, "A Viral Branching Model for Predicting the Spread of Electronic Word of Mouth," *Marketing Science* 29 (March–April 2010), pp. 348–65; Dave Balter and John Butman, "Clutter Cutter," *Marketing Management* (July–August 2006), pp. 49–50.
 67. Emanuel Rosen, *The Anatomy of Buzz* (New York: Currency, 2000).
 68. George Silverman, *The Secrets of Word-of-Mouth Marketing* (New York: AMACOM, 2001); Emanuel Rosen, *The Anatomy of Buzz* (New York: Currency, 2000), chapter 12; "Viral Marketing," *Sales & Marketing Automation* (November 1999), pp. 12–14.
 69. *Will It Blend?* www.willitblend.com; Blendtec, www.blendtec.com; Piet Levy, "I Tube, YouTube," *Marketing News*, March 30, 2009, p. 8; Phyllis Berman, "Food Fight," *Forbes*, October 13, 2008, p. 110; Rob Walker, "Mixing It Up," *New York Times*, August 24, 2008; Jon Fine, "Ready to Get Weird, Advertisers?" *BusinessWeek*, January 8, 2007, p. 24.
 70. Renée Dye, "The Buzz on Buzz," *Harvard Business Review* (November–December 2000), p. 139.
 71. Robert Berner, "I Sold It through the Grapevine," *BusinessWeek*, May 29, 2006, pp. 32–34.
 72. Barbara Kiviat, "Word on the Street," *Time*, April 12, 2007; Dave Balter, "Rules of the Game," *Advertising Age Point*, December 2005, pp. 22–23; Scott Kirsner, "How Much Can You Trust Buzz?" *Boston Globe*, November 14, 2005; Linda Tischler, "What's the Buzz?" *Fast Company*, May 2004, pp. 76–77.
 73. Matthew Creamer and Rupal Parekh, "Ideas of the Decade," *Advertising Age*, December 14, 2009.
 74. Amar Cheema and Andrew M. Kaikati, "The Effect of Need for Uniqueness on Word of Mouth," *Journal of Marketing Research* 47 (June 2010), pp. 553–63.
 75. Jacqueline Johnson Brown, Peter M. Reingen, and Everett M. Rogers, *Diffusion of Innovations*, 4th ed. (New York: Free Press, 1995); J. Johnson Brown and Peter Reingen, "Social Ties and Word-of-Mouth Referral Behavior," *Journal of Consumer Research* 14 (December 1987), pp. 350–62; Peter H. Reingen and Jerome B. Kernan, "Analysis of Referral Networks in Marketing: Methods and Illustration," *Journal of Marketing Research* 23 (November 1986), pp. 37–78.
 76. Malcolm Gladwell, *The Tipping Point: How Little Things Can Make a Big Difference* (Boston: Little, Brown & Company, 2000).
 77. Terry McDermott, "Criticism of Gladwell Reaches Tipping Point," *Columbia Journalism Review*, November 17, 2009; Clive Thompson, "Is the Tipping Point Toast?" *Fast Company*, February 1, 2008; Duncan Watts, *Six Degrees: The Science of a Connected Age* (New York: W.W. Norton, 2003).
 78. Douglas Atkin, *The Culting of Brands: When Customers Become True Believers* (New York: Penguin, 2004); Marian Salzman, Ira Matathia, and Ann O'Reilly, *Buzz: Harness the Power of Influence and Create Demand* (New York: Wiley, 2003).
 79. Bob Greenberg, "A Platform for Life," *Adweek NEXT*, September 14, 2009, p. 38.
 80. Michael Trusov, Anand V. Bodapati, and Randolph E. Bucklin, "Determining Influential Users in Internet Social Networks," *Journal of Marketing Research* 47 (August 2010), pp. 643–58.
 81. Dave Balter and John Butman, "Clutter Cutter," *Marketing Management* (July–August 2006), pp. 49–50; "Is There a Reliable Way to Measure Word-of-Mouth Marketing?" *Marketing NPV* 3 (2006), pp. 3–9.
 82. Digital Buzz, www.digitalbuzzblog.com; Mashable, www.mashable.com; Atomic Ideas, www.atomicideas.com, all accessed August 22, 2010.
 83. Keith Barry, "Fiesta Stars in Night of the Living Social Media Campaign," *Wired*, May 21, 2010; Matthew Dolan, "Ford Takes Online Gamble with New Fiesta," *Wall Street Journal*, April 8, 2009.
 84. This section is based in part on an excellent summary, "Is There a Reliable Way to Measure Word-of-Mouth

- Marketing?" *Marketing NPV* 3 (2006), pp. 3–9, available at www.marketingnpv.com.
85. Suzanne Vranica, "Social Media Draws a Crowd," *Wall Street Journal*, July 19, 2010; Jessi Hempel, "He Measures the Web," *Fortune*, November 9, 2009, pp. 94–98.
 86. Adam L. Penenberg, "How Much Are You Worth to Facebook?" *Fast Company*, October 1, 2009.
 87. Rick Lawrence, Prem Melville, Claudia Perlich, Vikas Sindhvani, Steve Meliksetian, Pei-Yun Hsueh, and Yan Liu, "Social Media Analytics," *OR/MS Today*, February 2010, pp. 26–30.
 88. "Employment by major occupational group, 2008 and projected 2018," http://www.bls.gov/emp/ep_table_101.pdf.
 89. John Bello, "Sell Like Your Outfit Is at Stake. It Is," *BusinessWeek Online*, February 5, 2004; John Bello, "The Importance of Sales for Entrepreneurs," *USA Today*, February 11, 2004; Jeanine Prezioso, "Lizard King's Story," *Fairfield County Business Journal*, December 10, 2001.
 90. Shrihari Sridhar, Murali K. Mantrala, and Sönke Albers, "Personal Selling Elasticities: A Meta-Analysis," *Journal of Marketing Research* 47 (October 2010).
 91. Adapted from Robert N. McMurry, "The Mystique of Super-Salesmanship," *Harvard Business Review*, March–April 1961, p. 114. Also see William C. Moncrief III, "Selling Activity and Sales Position Taxonomies for Industrial Sales Forces," *Journal of Marketing Research* 23 (August 1986), pp. 261–70.
 92. Lawrence G. Friedman and Timothy R. Furey, *The Channel Advantage: Going to Marketing with Multiple Sales Channels* (Oxford, UK: Butterworth-Heinemann, 1999).
 93. Michael Ahearne, Scott B. MacKenzie, Philip M. Podsakoff, John E. Mathieu, and Son K. Lam, "The Role of Consensus in Sales Team Performance," *Journal of Marketing Research* 47 (June 2010), pp. 458–69.
 94. Ashwin W. Joshi, "Salesperson Influence on Product Development: Insights from a Study of Small Manufacturing Organizations," *Journal of Marketing* 74 (January 2010), pp. 94–107; Philip Kotler, Neil Rackham, and Suj Krishnaswamy, "Ending the War between Sales & Marketing," *Harvard Business Review*, July–August 2006, pp. 68–78; Timothy M. Smith, Srinath Gopalakrishna, and Rubikar Chatterjee, "A Three-Stage Model of Integrated Marketing Communications at the Marketing-Sales Interface," *Journal of Marketing Research* 43 (November 2006), pp. 546–79.
 95. Michael Copeland, "Hits and Misses," *Business 2.0*, April 2004, p. 142.
 96. "Sales Performance Benchmarks," *Go-to-Market Strategies*, June 5, 2007. For international tax implications in compensation, see Dominique Rouziès, Anne T. Coughlan, Erin Anderson, and Dawn Iacobucci, "Determinants of Pay Levels and Structures in Sales Organizations," *Journal of Marketing* 73 (November 2009), pp. 92–104.
 97. Tony Ritigliano and Benson Smith, *Discover Your Sales Strengths* (New York: Random House Business Books, 2004).
 98. Sonke Albers, "Sales-Force Management—Compensation, Motivation, Selection, and Training," Bart Weitz and Robin Wensley, eds., *Handbook of Marketing* (London: Sage, 2002), pp. 248–66.
 99. Nanette Byrnes, "Avon Calling—Lots of New Reps," *BusinessWeek*, June 2, 2003, pp. 53–54.
 100. Michael R. W. Bommer, Brian F. O'Neil, and Beheruz N. Sethna, "A Methodology for Optimizing Selling Time of Salespersons," *Journal of Marketing Theory and Practice* (Spring 1994), pp. 61–75. See also, Lissan Joseph, "On the Optimality of Delegating Pricing Authority to the Sales Force," *Journal of Marketing* 65 (January 2001), pp. 62–70.
 101. Dartnell Corporation, *30th Sales-Force Compensation Survey* (Chicago: Dartnell Corp., 1999). Other breakdowns show that 12.7 percent is spent in service calls, 16 percent in administrative tasks, 25.1 percent in telephone selling, and 17.4 percent in waiting/traveling. For analysis of this database, see Sanjog Misra, Anne T. Coughlan, and Chakravarthi Narasimhan, "Salesforce Compensation: An Analytical and Empirical Examination of the Agency Theoretic Approach," *Quantitative Marketing and Economics* 3 (March 2005), pp. 5–39.
 102. Michael Ahearne, Son K. Lam, John E. Mathieu, and Willy Bolander, "Why Are Some Salespeople Better at Adapting to Organizational Change?" *Journal of Marketing* 74 (May 2010), pp. 65–79.
 103. Willem Verbeke and Richard P. Bagozzi, "Sales-Call Anxiety: Exploring What It Means When Fear Rules a Sales Encounter," *Journal of Marketing* 64 (July 2000), pp. 88–101. See also, Douglas E. Hughes and Michael Ahearne, "Energizing the Reseller's Sales Force: The Power of Brand Identification," *Journal of Marketing* 74 (July 2010), pp. 81–96.
 104. Gilbert A. Churchill Jr., Neil M. Ford, Orville C. Walker Jr., Mark W. Johnston, and Greg W. Marshall, *Sales-Force Management*, 9th ed. (New York: McGraw-Hill/Irwin, 2009). See also, Eric G. Harris, John C. Mowen, and Tom J. Brown, "Reexamining Salesperson Goal Orientations: Personality Influencers, Customer Orientation, and Work Satisfaction," *Journal of the Academy of Marketing Science* 33 (Winter 2005), pp. 19–35; Manfred Krafft, "An Empirical Investigation of the Antecedents of Sales-Force Control Systems," *Journal of Marketing* 63 (July 1999), pp. 120–34; Wujin Chu, Eitan Gerstner, and James D. Hess, "Costs and Benefits of Hard Sell," *Journal of Marketing Research* 32 (February 1995), pp. 97–102.
 105. Noah Lim, Michael J. Ahearne, and Sung H. Ham, "Designing Sales Contests: Does the Prize Structure Matter?" *Journal of Marketing Research* 46 (June 2009), pp. 356–71.
 106. Lisa Vaas, "Oracle Teaches Its Sales Force to Play Nice," *eWeek*, July 28, 2004; Lisa Vaas, "Oracle's Sales Force Reorg Finally Bears Fruit," *eWeek*,

December 17, 2003; Ian Mount, "Out of Control," *Business 2.0*, August 2002, pp. 38–44.

107. Philip M. Posdakoff and Scott B. MacKenzie, "Organizational Citizenship Behaviors and Sales-Unit Effectiveness," *Journal of Marketing Research* 31 (August 1994), pp. 351–63. See also, Andrea L. Dixon, Rosann L. Spiro, and Magbul Jamil, "Successful and Unsuccessful Sales Calls: Measuring Salesperson Attributions and Behavioral Intentions," *Journal of Marketing* 65 (July 2001), pp. 64–78; Willem Verbeke and Richard P. Bagozzi, "Sales-Call Anxiety: Exploring What It Means When Fear Rules a Sales Encounter," *Journal of Marketing* 64 (July 2000), pp. 88–101.
108. Neil Rackham, *SPIN Selling* (New York: McGraw-Hill, 1988). Also see his *The SPIN Selling Fieldbook* (New York: McGraw-Hill, 1996); James Lardner, "Selling Salesmanship," *Business 2.0*, December 2002–January 2003, p. 66; Sharon Drew Morgen, *Selling with Integrity: Reinventing Sales through Collaboration, Respect, and Serving* (New York: Berkeley Books, 1999); Neil Rackham and John De Vincentis, *Rethinking the Sales Force* (New York: McGraw-Hill, 1996).
109. Some of the following discussion is based on a classic analysis in W. J. E. Crissy, William H. Cunningham, and Isabella C. M. Cunningham, *Selling: The Personal Force in Marketing* (New York: Wiley, 1977), pp. 119–29. For some contemporary perspective and tips, see Jia Lynn Yang, "How to Sell in a Lousy Economy," *Fortune*, September 29, 2008, pp. 101–6 and Jessi Hempel, "IBM's All-Star Salesman," *Fortune*, September 29, 2008, pp. 110–19.
110. Stephanie Clifford, "Putting the Performance in Sales Performance," *Inc.*, February 2007, pp. 87–95.
111. Joel E. Urbany, "Justifying Profitable Pricing," *Journal of Product & Brand Management* 10 (2001), pp. 141–59.
112. Jia Lynn Yang, "How Can I Keep My Sales Team Productive in a Recession?" *Fortune*, March 2, 2009, p. 22.
113. V. Kumar, Rajkumar Venkatesan, and Werner Reinartz, "Performance Implications of Adopting a Customer-Focused Sales Campaign," *Journal of Marketing* 72 (September 2008), pp. 50–68; George R. Franke and Jeong-Eun Park, "Salesperson Adaptive Selling Behavior and Customer Orientation: A Meta-Analysis," *Journal of Marketing Research* 43 (November 2006), pp. 693–702; Richard G. McFarland, Goutam N. Challagalla, and Tasadduq A. Shervani, "Influence Tactics for Effective Adaptive Selling," *Journal of Marketing* 70 (October 2006), pp. 103–17.
- Wii Is Creaming the Competition," *Business 2.0*, April 25, 2007; Martin Fackler, "Putting the We Back in Wii," *New York Times*, June 8, 2007.
2. For some scholarly reviews, see Ely Dahan and John R. Hauser, "Product Development: Managing a Dispersed Process," Bart Weitz and Robin Wensley, eds., *Handbook of Marketing* (London: Sage, 2002), pp. 179–222; Dipak Jain, "Managing New-Product Development for Strategic Competitive Advantage," Dawn Iacobucci, ed., *Kellogg on Marketing*, (New York: Wiley, 2001), pp. 130–48; Jerry Wind and Vijay Mahajan, "Issues and Opportunities in New-Product Development: An Introduction to the Special Issue," *Journal of Marketing Research* 34 (February 1997), pp. 1–12. For an overview of different industry approaches, see Frank T. Rothaermel and Andrew M. Hess, "Innovation Strategies Combined," *MIT Sloan Management Review* (Spring 2010), pp. 13–15.
3. Scott Sanderude, "Growth from Harvesting the Sky: The \$200 Million Challenge," talk at Marketing Science Institute Conference: New Frontiers for Growth, Boston, MA, April 2005.
4. Stephen J. Carson, "When to Give Up Control of Outsourced New-Product Development," *Journal of Marketing* 71 (January 2007), pp. 49–66.
5. Elaine Wong, "P&G's '09 Success Hinged on Value, Affordable Luxury," *Brandweek*, March 22, 2010, p. 8.
6. For some academic discussion of the effects of new-product introductions on markets, see Harald J. Van Heerde, Carl F. Mela, and Puneet Manchanda, "The Dynamic Effect of Innovation on Market Structure," *Journal of Marketing Research* 41 (May 2004), pp. 166–83; and for a contrast with radically different new products, see Khaled Aboulnasr, Om Narasimhan, Edward Blair, and Rajesh Chandy, "Competitive Response to Radical Product Innovations," *Journal of Marketing* 72 (May 2008), pp. 94–110.
7. "Enabling Multifaceted Innovation," *IBM Global Business Services*, www-935.ibm.com/services/us/gbs/bus/pdf/g510-6310-executive-brief-enabling-multifaceted.pdf, 2006.
8. Shuba Srinivasan, Koen Pauwels, Jorge Silva-Risso, and Dominique M. Hanssens, "Product Innovations, Advertising and Stock Returns," *Journal of Marketing* 73 (January 2009), pp. 24–43; Alina B. Sorescu and Jelena Spanjol, "Innovation's Effect on Firm Value and Risk: Insights from Consumer Packaged Goods," *Journal of Marketing* 72 (March 2008), pp. 114–32; Sungwook Min, Manohar U. Kalwani, and William T. Robinson, "Market Pioneer and Early Follower Survival Risks: A Contingency Analysis of Really New versus Incrementally New Product-Markets," *Journal of Marketing* 70 (January 2006), pp. 15–33; C. Page Moreau, Arthur B. Markman, and Donald R. Lehmann, "'What Is It?' Category Flexibility and Consumers' Response to Really New Products," *Journal of Consumer Research* 27 (March 2001), pp. 489–98.

Chapter 20

1. Brad Stone, "Nintendo Wii to Add Netflix Service for Streaming Video," *New York Times*, January 13, 2010; Eric A. Taub, "Will Nothing Slow Wii?" *New York Times Bits Blog*, October 17, 2008; John Gaudiosi, "How the

9. Stefan Wuyts, Shantanu Dutta, and Stefan Stremersch, "Portfolios of Interfirm Agreements in Technology-Intensive Markets: Consequences for Innovation and Profitability," *Journal of Marketing* 68 (April 2004), pp. 88–100; Aric Rindfleisch and Christine Moorman, "The Acquisition and Utilization of Information in New-Product Alliance: A Strength-of-Ties Perspective," *Journal of Marketing* 65 (April 2001), pp. 1–18. See also, Raghunath Singh Rao, Rajesh K. Chandy, and Jaideep C. Prabhu, "The Fruits of Legitimacy: Why Some New Ventures Gain More from Innovation Than Others," *Journal of Marketing* 72 (July 2008), pp. 58–75.
10. Gerard J. Tellis, Jaideep C. Prabhu, and Rajesh K. Chandy, "Radical Innovation across Nations: The Preeminence of Corporate Culture," *Journal of Marketing* 73 (January 2009), pp. 3–23.
11. Steve Hoeffler, "Measuring Preferences for Really New Products," *Journal of Marketing Research* 40 (November 2003), pp. 406–20; Glen Urban, Bruce Weinberg, and John R. Hauser, "Pre-market Forecasting of Really New Products," *Journal of Marketing* 60 (January 1996), pp. 47–60.
12. Andy Grove, "Think Disruptive," *Condé Nast Portfolio*, December 2007, pp. 170–75; Ashish Sood and Gerard J. Tellis, "Technological Evolution and Radical Innovation," *Journal of Marketing* 69 (July 2005), pp. 152–68.
13. For more discussion, see Jakki Mohr, *Marketing of High-Technology Products and Innovations*, 2nd ed. (Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2005).
14. Carol Matlack, "How Danone Turns Bacteria into Bucks," *BusinessWeek*, November 15, 2007, pp. 76–77; Jack Ewing, "The Bimmer, Plugged In," *BusinessWeek*, March 23 and 30, 2009, p. 78; Beth Kowitz, "Blackboard Rules the Schools," *Fortune*, November 9, 2009, p. 28.
15. Steve Hamm, "Speed Demons," *BusinessWeek*, March 27, 2006, pp. 69–76.
16. Christina Passariello, "Brand New Bag: Louis Vuitton Tries Modern Methods on Factory Lines," *Wall Street Journal*, October 9, 2006.
17. Gary Hamel, "W. L. Gore: Lessons from a Management Revolutionary," *Wall Street Journal*, March 18, 2010; "The World's Most Innovative Companies," *Fast Company*, March 2009; Brad Weiners, "Gore-Tex Tackles the Great Indoors," *Business 2.0*, April 2004, p. 32; Ann Harrington, "Who's Afraid of a New Product," *Fortune*, November 10, 2003, pp. 189–92.
18. Tim Brown, *Change by Design: How Design Thinking Transforms Organizations and Inspires Innovation* (New York: HarperCollins, 2009).
19. Clayton M. Christensen, *Disrupting Class: How Disruptive Innovation Will Change the Way the World Learns* (New York: McGraw-Hill, 2008); Clayton M. Christensen, *The Innovator's Solution: Creating and Sustaining Successful Growth* (Boston: Harvard University Press, 2003); Clayton M. Christensen, *The Innovator's Dilemma: When New Technologies Cause Great Firms to Fail* (Boston: Harvard University Press, 1997).
20. Ely Dahan and John R. Hauser, "Product Development: Managing a Dispersed Process," Bart Weitz and Robin Wensley, eds., *Handbook of Marketing* (London: Sage, 2002), pp. 179–222.
21. Robert G. Cooper and Elko J. Kleinschmidt, *New Products: The Key Factors in Success* (Chicago: American Marketing Association, 1990).
22. *Ibid.*, pp. 35–38.
23. Susumu Ogama and Frank T. Piller, "Reducing the Risks of New-Product Development," *MIT Sloan Management Review* 47 (Winter 2006), pp. 65–71; A.C. Nielsen, "New-Product Introduction—Successful Innovation/Failure: Fragile Boundary," A.C. Nielsen BASES and Ernst & Young Global Client Consulting, June 24, 1999; Deloitte and Touche, "Vision in Manufacturing Study," Deloitte Consulting and Kenan-Flagler Business School, March 6, 1998.
24. For more discussion, see Dipak Jain, "Managing New-Product Development for Strategic Competitive Advantage," Dawn Iacobucci, ed., *Kellogg on Marketing* (New York: Wiley, 2001).
25. Steve Hamm, "Speed Demons," *BusinessWeek*, March 27, 2006, pp. 69–76.
26. Tom McNichol, "A Start-Up's Best Friend? Failure," *Business 2.0*, March 2007, pp. 39–41.
27. Thomas N. Burton, "By Learning from Failures Lilly Keeps Drug Pipelines Full," *Wall Street Journal*, April 21, 2004.
28. Amy Barrett, "J&J: Reinventing How It Invents," *BusinessWeek*, April 17, 2006, pp. 60–61.
29. Virginia Gardiner, "Dyson Airblade," *Dwell*, March 10, 2010; Reena Jana, "Dyson's Air Multiplier: Flaw as Function," *Bloomberg BusinessWeek*, October 12, 2009; Chuck Salter, "Failure Doesn't Suck," *Fast Company*, May 2007, p. 44.
30. Vijay Govindrajana and Chris Trimble, "Stop the Innovation Wars," *Harvard Business Review*, July–August 2010, pp. 76–83; Doug Ayers, Robert Dahlstrom, and Steven J. Skinner, "An Exploratory Investigation of Organizational Antecedents to New-Product Success," *Journal of Marketing Research* 34 (February 1997), pp. 107–16; David S. Hopkins, *Options in New-Product Organization* (New York: Conference Board, 1974).
31. Brian Hindo, "Rewiring Westinghouse," *BusinessWeek*, May 19, 2008, pp. 48–49.
32. Danielle Sacks, Chuck Salter, Alan Deutschman, and Scott Kirsner, "Innovation Scouts," *Fast Company*, May 2007, p. 90; "Ongoing Innovation: Tom Malloy on Sustaining the Relevance and Impact of Adobe's Advanced Technology Labs," *Knowledge@Wharton*, March 21, 2007; Shantanu Narayen, "Connecting the Dots Isn't Enough," *New York Times*, July 18, 2009.
33. Lisa C. Troy, Tanat Hirunyawipada, and Audhesh K. Paswan, "Cross-Functional Integration and New Product Success: An Empirical Investigation of the Findings," *Journal of Marketing* 72 (September 2008), pp. 132–46; Rajesh Sethi, Daniel C. Smith, and C.

- Whan Park, "Cross-Functional Product Development Teams, Creativity, and the Innovativeness of New Consumer Products," *Journal of Marketing Research* 38 (February 2001), pp. 73–85.
34. Robert G. Cooper, *Winning at New Products: Accelerating the Process from Idea to Launch* (New York: Perseus Publishing, 2001); See also, Robert G. Cooper, "Stage-Gate Systems: A New Tool for Managing New Products," *Business Horizons*, May–June 1990, pp. 44–54; Robert G. Cooper, "The NewProd System: The Industry Experience," *Journal of Product Innovation Management* 9 (June 1992), pp. 113–27.
 35. Robert G. Cooper, *Product Leadership: Creating and Launching Superior New Products* (New York: Perseus Books, 1998).
 36. Rajesh Sethi and Zafar Iqbal, "Stage-Gate Controls, Learning Failure, and Adverse Effect on Novel New Products," *Journal of Marketing* 72 (January 2008), pp. 118–34.
 37. Ely Dahan and John R. Hauser, "Product Development: Managing a Dispersed Process," Bart Weitz and Robin Wensley, eds., *Handbook of Marketing* (London: Sage, 2002), pp. 179–222.
 38. Another alternative approach to the funnel process advocates "rocketing." See, David Nichols, *Return on Ideas* (West Sussex, England: Wiley, 2007).
 39. Michael Zedalis, "Deploying Stage-Gate on a Global Scale—Critical Elements That Drive Performance" and Charles Gagnon, "Driving Value Creation with the Right Portfolio Mix," talks given at Stage-Gate Leadership Summit 2007.
 40. John Hauser, Gerard J. Tellis, and Abbie Griffin, "Research on Innovation: A Review and Agenda for Marketing Science," *Marketing Science* 25 (November–December 2006), pp. 687–717.
 41. Byron Acohido, "Microsoft Cultures Creativity in Unique Lab," *USA Today*, July 11, 2007; Erich Joachimsthaler, *Hidden in Plain Sight: How to Find and Execute Your Company's Next Big Growth Strategy* (Boston: Harvard Business School Press, 2007); Subin Im and John P. Workman Jr., "Market Orientation, Creativity, and New-Product Performance in High-Technology Firms," *Journal of Marketing* 68 (April 2004), pp. 114–32.
 42. Erich Joachimsthaler, *Hidden in Plain Sight: How to Find and Execute Your Company's Next Big Growth Strategy* (Boston: Harvard Business School Publishing, 2007).
 43. Henry Chesbrough, *Open Business Models: How to Thrive in the New-Innovation Landscape* (Boston: Harvard University Press, 2006); Eric Von Hippel, *Democratizing Innovation* (Cambridge, MA: MIT Press, 2005); Burt Helm, "Inside a White-Hot Idea Factory," *BusinessWeek*, January 15, 2005, pp. 72–73; C.K. Prahalad and Venkat Ramaswamy, *The Future of Competition: Cocreating Unique Value with Customers* (Boston: Harvard University Press, 2004); Henry Chesbrough, *Open Innovation: The New Imperative for Creating and Profiting from Technology* (Boston: Harvard University Press, 2003).
 44. Bruce Horovitz, "Marketers Zooming in on Your Daily Routines," *USA Today*, April 30, 2007; Ashwin W. Joshi and Sanjay Sharma, "Customer Knowledge Development: Antecedents and Impact on New-Product Performance," *Journal of Marketing* 68 (October 2004), pp. 47–59.
 45. Abbie J. Griffin and John Hauser, "The Voice of the Customer," *Marketing Science* 12 (Winter 1993), pp. 1–27.
 46. Miho Inada, "Tokyo Café Targets Trend Makers," *Wall Street Journal*, August 24, 2008.
 47. Peter C. Honebein and Roy F. Cammarano, "Customers at Work," *Marketing Management* 15 (January–February 2006), pp. 26–31; Peter C. Honebein and Roy F. Cammarano, *Creating Do-It-Yourself Customers: How Great Customer Experiences Build Great Companies* (Mason, OH: Texere Southwestern Educational Publishing, 2005).
 48. Jeff Howe, *Crowdsourcing: Why the Power of the Crowd Is Driving the Future of Business* (New York, Crown Business, 2008).
 49. Guido Jouret, "Inside Cisco's Search for the Next Big Idea," *Harvard Business Review*, September 2009, pp. 43–45; Anya Kamentz, "The Power of the Prize," *Fast Company*, May 2008, pp. 43–45; Cisco, www.cisco.com/web/solutions/iprize/index.html.
 50. Patricia Seybold, *Outside Innovation: How Your Customers Will Codesign Your Company's Future* (New York: Collins, 2006).
 51. Helena Yli-Renko and Ramkumar Janakiraman, "How Customer Portfolio Affects New Product Development in Technology-Based Firms," *Journal of Marketing* 72 (September 2008), pp. 131–48; Donna L. Hoffman, Praveen K. Kopalle, and Thomas P. Novak, "The 'Right' Consumers for Better Concepts: Identifying and Using Consumers High in Emergent Nature to Further Develop New Product Concepts," *Journal of Marketing Research* 47 (October 2010), in press.
 52. Pioneering work in this area is represented by Eric von Hippel, "Lead Users: A Source of Novel Product Concepts," *Management Science* 32 (July 1986), pp. 791–805. Also see Eric von Hippel, *The Sources of Innovation* (New York: Oxford University Press, 1988); Eric von Hippel, *Democratizing Innovation* (Cambridge, MA: MIT Press, 2005); and Pamela D. Morrison, John H. Roberts and David F. Midgley, "The Nature of Lead Users and Measurement of Leading Edge Status," *Research Policy* 33 (2004), pp. 351–62.
 53. John W. Heinke Jr. and Chun Zhang, "Increasing Supplier-Driven Innovation," *MIT Sloan Management Review* (Winter 2010), pp. 41–46; Eric (Er) Fang, "Customer Participation and the Trade-Off Between New Product Innovativeness and Speed to Market," *Journal of Marketing* 72 (July 2008), pp. 90–104. Note that this research also shows that customer involvement can also slow the development process if a high level of interaction and coordination is required across stages.
 54. Kevin Zheng Zhou, Chi Kin (Bennett) Yim, and David K. Tse, "The Effects of Strategic Orientations on Technology- and Market-Based Breakthrough

- Innovations,” *Journal of Marketing* 69 (April 2005), pp. 42–60; Michael Treacy, “Ignore the Consumer,” *Advertising Age Point* (September 2005), pp. 15–19.
55. Sharon Machlis, “Innovation and the 20% Solution,” *Computerworld*, February 2, 2009.
 56. “The World’s Fifty Most Innovative Companies,” Special Report, *BusinessWeek*, May 9, 2007.
 57. Darren W. Dahl and Page Moreau, “The Influence and Value of Analogical Thinking during New-Product Ideation,” *Journal of Marketing Research* 39 (February 2002), pp. 47–60; Michael Michalko, *Cracking Creativity: The Secrets of Creative Genius* (Berkeley, CA: Ten Speed Press, 1998); James M. Higgins, *101 Creative Problem-Solving Techniques* (New York: New Management, 1994).
 58. Philip Kotler and Fernando Trias de Bes, *Lateral Marketing: New Techniques for Finding Breakthrough Ideas* (New York: Wiley, 2003).
 59. NBC Research, “Friends,” *Program Test Report*, May 27, 1994; and NBC’s Failing Grade for “Friends,” *The Smoking Gun*, May 10, 2004, www.smokinggun.com.
 60. Olivier Toubia and Laurent Florès, “Adaptive Idea Screening Using Consumers,” *Marketing Science* 26 (May–June 2007), pp. 342–60; Melanie Wells, “Have It Your Way,” *Forbes*, February 14, 2005.
 61. David L. Alexander, John G. Lynch Jr., and Qing Wang, “As Time Goes By: Do Cold Feet Follow Warm Intentions for Really New Versus Incrementally New Products,” *Journal of Marketing Research* 45 (June 2008), pp. 307–19; Steve Hoeffler, “Measuring Preferences for Really New Products,” *Journal of Marketing Research* 40 (November 2003), pp. 406–20.
 62. Min Zhao, Steve Hoeffler, and Darren W. Dahl, “The Role of Imagination-Focused Visualization on New Product Evaluation,” *Journal of Marketing Research* 46 (February 2009), pp. 46–55; Raquel Castano, Mita Sujjan, Manish Kacker, Harish Sujjan, “Managing Customer Uncertainty in the Adoption of New Products: Temporal Distance and Mental Stimulation,” *Journal of Marketing Research* 45 (June 2008), pp. 320–36; Dahl and Moreau, “The Influence and Value of Analogical Thinking during New-Product Ideation,” *Journal of Marketing Research* 39; Michelle L. Roehm and Brian Sternthal, “The Moderating Effect of Knowledge and Resources on the Persuasive Impact of Analogies,” *Journal of Consumer Research* 28 (September 2001), pp. 257–72; Darren W. Dahl, Amitava Chattopadhyay, and Gerald J. Gorn, “The Use of Visual Mental Imagery in New-Product Design,” *Journal of Marketing Research* 36 (February 1999), pp. 18–28.
 63. Steve Hamm, “Speed Demons,” *BusinessWeek*, March 27, 2006, pp. 69–76.
 64. Jon Fortt, “Heavy Duty Computing,” *Fortune*, March 2, 2009, pp. 34–36.
 65. For additional information, also see David Bakken and Curtis L. Frazier, “Conjoint Analysis: Understanding Consumer Decision Making,” Rajiv Grover and Marco Vriens, eds., *The Handbook of Marketing Research* (Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage, 2006); Vithala R. Rao and John R. Hauser, “Conjoint Analysis, Related Modeling, and Application,” Yoram Wind and Paul E. Green, eds., *Market Research and Modeling: Progress and Prospects: A Tribute to Paul Green* (New York: Springer, 2004), pp. 141–68; Jordan J. Louviere, David A. Hensher, and Joffre D. Swait, *Stated Choice Models: Analysis and Applications* (New York: Cambridge University Press, 2000); Paul E. Green and V. Srinivasan, “Conjoint Analysis in Marketing: New Developments with Implications for Research and Practice,” *Journal of Marketing* 54 (October 1990), pp. 3–19; *Sawtooth Software*. For another approach, see Young-Hoon Park, Min Ding and Vithala R. Rao, “Eliciting Preference for Complex Products: A Web-Based Upgrading Method,” *Journal of Marketing Research* 45 (October 2008), pp. 562–74.
 66. Jerry Wind, Paul Green, Douglas Shifflet, and Marsha Scarbrough, “Courtyard by Marriott: Designing a Hotel Facility with Consumer-Based Marketing Models,” *Interfaces* 19 (January–February 1989), pp. 25–47; For another interesting application, see Paul E. Green, Abba M. Krieger, and Terry Vavra, “Evaluating EZ-Pass: Using Conjoint Analysis to Assess Consumer Response to a New Tollway Technology,” *Marketing Research* (Summer 1999), pp. 5–16.
 67. The full-profile example was taken from Paul E. Green and Yoram Wind, “New Ways to Measure Consumers’ Judgments,” *Harvard Business Review*, July–August 1975, pp. 107–17.
 68. Peter N. Golder and Gerald J. Tellis, “Will It Ever Fly? Modeling the Takeoff of Really New Consumer Durables,” *Marketing Science* 16 (Summer 1997), pp. 256–70; Glen L. Urban, Bruce D. Weinberg, and John R. Hauser, “Premarket Forecasting of Really New Products,” *Journal of Marketing* 60 (January 1996), pp. 47–60; Robert Blattberg and John Golany, “Tracker: An Early Test-Market Forecasting and Diagnostic Model for New-Product Planning,” *Journal of Marketing Research* 15 (May 1978), pp. 192–202.
 69. Roger A. Kerin, Michael G. Harvey, and James T. Rothe, “Cannibalism and New-Product Development,” *Business Horizons*, October 1978, pp. 25–31.
 70. The present value (V) of a future sum (I) to be received t years from today and discounted at the interest rate (r) is given by $V = I_t / (1 + r)^t$. Thus $\$4,716,000 / (1.15)^5 = \$2,345,000$.
 71. John Hauser, “House of Quality,” *Harvard Business Review*, May–June 1988, pp. 63–73; Customer-driven engineering is also called “quality function deployment.” See also, Lawrence R. Guinta and Nancy C. Praizler, *The QFD Book: The Team Approach to Solving Problems and Satisfying Customers through Quality Function Deployment* (New York: AMACOM, 1993); and V. Srinivasan, William S. Lovejoy, and David Beach, “Integrated Product Design for Marketability and Manufacturing,” *Journal of Marketing Research* 34 (February 1997), pp. 154–63.
 72. Tom Peters, *The Circle of Innovation* (New York: Vintage, 1999), p. 96. For more general discussion, see

- also, Sethi, "New Product Quality and Product Development Teams," *Journal of Marketing* 64 (April 2000), pp. 1–14; Moorman and Miner, "The Convergence of Planning and Execution Improvisation in New-Product Development," pp. 1–20; MacChavan and Graver, "From Embedded Knowledge to Embodied Knowledge," pp. 1–12.
73. Kevin J. Clancy, Peter C. Krieg, and Marianne McGarry Wolf, *Marketing New Products Successfully: Using Simulated Test Marketing Methodology* (New York: Lexington Books, 2005); Glen L. Urban, John R. Hauser, and Roberta A. Chicos, "Information Acceleration: Validation and Lessons from the Field," *Journal of Marketing Research* 34 (February 1997), pp. 143–53; V. Mahajan and Jerry Wind, "New Product Models: Practice, Shortcomings, and Desired Improvements," *Journal of Product Innovation Management* 9 (June 1992), pp. 129–39.
 74. Eyal Biyalogorsky, William Boulding, and Richard Staelin, "Stuck in the Past: Why Managers Persist with New-Product Failures," *Journal of Marketing* 70 (April 2006), pp. 108–21.
 75. Rajesh Chandy, Brigette Hopstaken, Om Narasimhan, and Jaideep Prabhu, "From Invention to Innovation: Conversion Ability in Product Development," *Journal of Marketing Research* 43 (August 2006), pp. 494–508.
 76. Remco Prins and Peter C. Verhoef, "Marketing Communication Drivers of Adoption Timing of a New E-Service among Existing Customers," *Journal of Marketing* 71 (April 2007), pp. 169–83.
 77. For further discussion, see Feryal Erhun, Paulo Gonçalves, and Jay Hopman, "The Art of Managing New Product Transitions," *MIT Sloan Management Review* 48 (Spring 2007), pp. 73–80; Yuhong Wu, Sridhar Balasubramanian, and Vijay Mahajan, "When Is a Preannounced New Product Likely to Be Delayed?" *Journal of Marketing* 68 (April 2004), pp. 101–13; Raji Srinivasan, Gary L. Lilien, and Arvind Rangaswamy, "First in First out? The Effects of Network Externalities on Pioneer Survival," *Journal of Marketing* 68 (January 2004), pp. 41–58; Barry L. Bayus, Sanjay Jain, and Ambar Rao, "Truth or Consequences: An Analysis of Truth or Vaporware and New-Product Announcements," *Journal of Marketing Research* 38 (February 2001), pp. 3–13; Thomas S. Robertson, Jehoshua Eliashberg, and Talia Rymon, "New-Product Announcement Signals and Incumbent Reactions," *Journal of Marketing* 59 (July 1995), pp. 1–15; Frank H. Alpert and Michael A. Kamins, "Pioneer Brand Advantages and Consumer Behavior: A Conceptual Framework and Propositional Inventory," *Journal of the Academy of Marketing Science* 22 (Summer 1994), pp. 244–336; Robert J. Thomas, "Timing: The Key to Market Entry," *Journal of Consumer Marketing* 2 (Summer 1985), pp. 77–87.
 78. Yvonne van Everdingen, Dennis Folk, and Stefan Stremersch, "Modeling Global Spillover in New Product Takeoff," *Journal of Marketing Research* 46 (October 2009), pp. 637–52; Katrijn Gielens and Jan-Benedict E. M. Steenkamp, "Drivers of Consumer Acceptance of New Packaged Goods: An Investigation across Products and Countries," *International Journal of Research in Marketing* 24 (June 2007), pp. 97–111; Marc Fischer, Venkatesh Shankar, and Michael Clement, "Can a Late Mover Use International Market Entry Strategy to Challenge the Pioneer?" Marketing Science Institute Working Paper 05-118, Cambridge, MA; Venkatesh Shankar, Gregory S. Carpenter, and Lakshman Krishnamukthi, "Late Mover Advantages: How Innovative Late Entrants Outsell Pioneers," *Journal of Marketing Research* 35 (February 1998), pp. 54–70.
 79. Philip Kotler and Gerald Zaltman, "Targeting Prospects for a New Product," *Journal of Advertising Research* (February 1976), pp. 7–20.
 80. Mark Leslie and Charles A. Holloway, "The Sales Learning Curve," *Harvard Business Review*, July–August 2006, pp. 114–23.
 81. For details, see Keith G. Lockyer, *Critical Path Analysis and Other Project Network Techniques* (London: Pitman, 1984); see also; Arvind Rangaswamy and Gary L. Lilien, "Software Tools for New-Product Development," *Journal of Marketing Research* 34 (February 1997), pp. 177–84.
 82. The following discussion leans heavily on Everett M. Rogers, *Diffusion of Innovations* (New York: Free Press, 1962). Also see his third edition, published in 1983.
 83. C. Page Moreau, Donald R. Lehmann, and Arthur B. Markman, "Entrenched Knowledge Structures and Consumer Response to New Products," *Journal of Marketing Research* 38 (February 2001), pp. 14–29.
 84. John T. Gourville, "Eager Sellers & Stony Buyers," *Harvard Business Review*, June 2006, pp. 99–106.
 85. Chuan-Fong Shih and Alladi Venkatesh, "Beyond Adoption: Development and Application of a Use-Diffusion Model," *Journal of Marketing* 68 (January 2004), pp. 59–72.
 86. Michal Herzenstein, Steven S. Posavac, and J. Joško Brakuz, "Adoption of New and Really New Products: The Effects of Self-Regulation Systems and Risk Salience," *Journal of Marketing Research* 44 (May 2007), pp. 251–60; Christophe Van den Bulte and Yogesh V. Joshi, "New-Product Diffusion with Influentials and Imitators," *Marketing Science* 26 (May–June 2007), pp. 400–21; Steve Hoeffler, "Measuring Preferences for Really New Products," *Journal of Marketing Research* 40 (November 2003), pp. 406–20.
 87. Everett M. Rogers, *Diffusion of Innovations* (New York: Free Press, 1962), p. 192; Geoffrey A. Moore, *Crossing the Chasm: Marketing and Selling High-Tech Products to Mainstream Customers* (New York: HarperBusiness, 1999); For an interesting application with services, see Barak Libai, Eitan Muller, and Renana Peres, "The Diffusion of Services," *Journal of Marketing Research* 46 (April 2009), pp. 163–75.
 88. A. Parasuraman and Charles L. Colby, *Techno-Ready Marketing* (New York: Free Press, 2001); Jakki Mohr, *Marketing of High-Technology Products and Innovations* (Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2001).

89. Jordan Robertson, "How Nike Got Street Cred," *Business 2.0*, May 2004, pp. 43–46.
90. Cliff Edwards, "Will Souping Up TiVo Save It?" *BusinessWeek*, May 17, 2004, pp. 63–64; Cliff Edwards, "Is TiVo's Signal Still Fading?" *BusinessWeek*, September 10, 2001, pp. 72–74.
91. Fareena Sultan, John U. Farley, and Donald R. Lehman, "Reflection on 'A Meta-Analysis of Applications of Diffusion Models,'" *Journal of Marketing Research* 33 (May 1996), pp. 247–49; Vijay Mahajan, Eitan Muller, and Frank M. Bass, "Diffusion of New Products: Empirical Generalizations and Managerial Uses," *Marketing Science* 14 (Summer 1995), pp. G79–G89; Minhi Hahn, Sehoon Park, and Andris A. Zoltners, "Analysis of New-Product Diffusion Using a Four-Segment Trial-Repeat Model," *Marketing Science* 13 (Summer 1994), pp. 224–47; Hubert Gatignon and Thomas S. Robertson, "A Propositional Inventory for New Diffusion Research," *Journal of Consumer Research* 11 (March 1985), pp. 849–67.
10. "US Export Fact Sheet," *International Trade Administration*, http://trade.gov/press/press_releases/2009/export-factsheet_021109.pdf.
11. Jan Johanson and Finn Wiedersheim-Paul, "The Internationalization of the Firm," *Journal of Management Studies* 12 (October 1975), pp. 305–22.
12. Michael R. Czinkota and Ilkka A. Ronkainen, *International Marketing*, 9th ed. (Cincinnati, OH: South-Western Cengage Learning, 2010).
13. For a thorough review of academic research on global marketing, see Johny K. Johansson, "Global Marketing: Research on Foreign Entry, Local Marketing, Global Management," Bart Weitz and Robin Wensley, eds., *Handbook of Marketing* (London: Sage, 2002), pp. 457–83. Also see Johny K. Johansson, *Global Marketing*, 5th ed. (New York: McGraw-Hill, 2009). For some global marketing research issues, see C. Samuel Craig and Susan P. Douglas, *International Marketing Research*, 3rd ed. (Chichester, UK: John Wiley & Sons, 2005).
14. Marc Gunther, "The World's New Economic Landscape," *Fortune*, July 26, 2010, pp. 105–106.
15. According to the *CIA World Factbook* (www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/index.html), there are 34 developed countries: Andorra, Australia, Austria, Belgium, Bermuda, Canada, Denmark, Faroe Islands, Finland, France, Germany, Greece, Holy See, Iceland, Ireland, Israel, Italy, Japan, Liechtenstein, Luxembourg, Malta, Monaco, Netherlands, New Zealand, Norway, Portugal, San Marino, South Africa, Spain, Sweden, Switzerland, Turkey, United Kingdom, and United States. They note that DCs are similar to the new International Monetary Fund (IMF) term "advanced economies" that adds Hong Kong, South Korea, Singapore, and Taiwan but drops Malta, Mexico, South Africa, and Turkey.

Chapter 21

1. Mehul Srivastava, "What the Nano Means to India," *BusinessWeek*, May 11, 2009, pp. 60–61; Steve Hamm, "IBM vs. Tata: Which Is More American?" *BusinessWeek*, May 5, 2008, p. 28; Manjeet Kirpalani, "Tata: The Master of The Gentle Approach," *BusinessWeek*, February 25, 2008, pp. 64–66; Kevin Maney, "Model T(ata)," *Condé Nast Portfolio*, February 2008, pp. 35–36; David Welch and Nandini Lakshman, "My Other Car Is a Tata," *BusinessWeek*, January 14, 2008, pp. 33–34; Robyn Meredith, "The Next People's Car," *Forbes*, April 16, 2007, pp. 70–74; Pete Engardo, "The Last Rajah," *BusinessWeek*, August 13, 2007, pp. 46–51.
2. Michael Elliott, "The New Global Opportunity," *Fortune*, July 5, 2010, pp. 96–102.
3. Alex Taylor III, "The New Motor City," *Fortune*, October 27, 2008, pp. 166–172.
4. David Kiley, "Baseball, Apple Pie . . . and Mihindra?" *BusinessWeek*, November 5, 2007, pp. 61–63.
5. Michael Arndt, "Invasion of the Guatemalan Chicken," *Bloomberg BusinessWeek*, March 22 and 29, 2010, pp. 72–73.
6. Michael E. Porter, *Competitive Strategy* (New York: Free Press, 1980), p. 275.
7. Alex Taylor III, "Hyundai Smokes the Competition," *Fortune*, January 18, 2010, pp. 62–71; Moon Ihlwan and David Kiley, "Hyundai Gains with Marketing Blitz," *BusinessWeek*, September 17, 2009; Moon Ihlwan and David Kiley, "Hyundai Floors It in the U.S.," *BusinessWeek*, February 27, 2009, pp. 30–31.
8. Charles P. Wallace, "Charge!" *Fortune*, September 28, 1998, pp. 189–96; World Trade Organization, www.wto.org.
9. For a comprehensive treatment, see Philip R. Cateora, Mary C. Gilly, and John L. Graham, *International Marketing* (New York: McGraw-Hill/Irwin, 2009).
10. "US Export Fact Sheet," *International Trade Administration*, http://trade.gov/press/press_releases/2009/export-factsheet_021109.pdf.
11. Jan Johanson and Finn Wiedersheim-Paul, "The Internationalization of the Firm," *Journal of Management Studies* 12 (October 1975), pp. 305–22.
12. Michael R. Czinkota and Ilkka A. Ronkainen, *International Marketing*, 9th ed. (Cincinnati, OH: South-Western Cengage Learning, 2010).
13. For a thorough review of academic research on global marketing, see Johny K. Johansson, "Global Marketing: Research on Foreign Entry, Local Marketing, Global Management," Bart Weitz and Robin Wensley, eds., *Handbook of Marketing* (London: Sage, 2002), pp. 457–83. Also see Johny K. Johansson, *Global Marketing*, 5th ed. (New York: McGraw-Hill, 2009). For some global marketing research issues, see C. Samuel Craig and Susan P. Douglas, *International Marketing Research*, 3rd ed. (Chichester, UK: John Wiley & Sons, 2005).
14. Marc Gunther, "The World's New Economic Landscape," *Fortune*, July 26, 2010, pp. 105–106.
15. According to the *CIA World Factbook* (www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/index.html), there are 34 developed countries: Andorra, Australia, Austria, Belgium, Bermuda, Canada, Denmark, Faroe Islands, Finland, France, Germany, Greece, Holy See, Iceland, Ireland, Israel, Italy, Japan, Liechtenstein, Luxembourg, Malta, Monaco, Netherlands, New Zealand, Norway, Portugal, San Marino, South Africa, Spain, Sweden, Switzerland, Turkey, United Kingdom, and United States. They note that DCs are similar to the new International Monetary Fund (IMF) term "advanced economies" that adds Hong Kong, South Korea, Singapore, and Taiwan but drops Malta, Mexico, South Africa, and Turkey.
16. Satish Shankar, Charles Ormiston, Nicolas Bloch, Robert Schaus, and Vijay Vishwanath, "How to Win in Emerging Markets," *MIT Sloan Management Review* (April 2008).
17. "Kraft Revamps Developing Markets after Cadbury," *Reuters*, June 30, 2010; Ned Douthat, "Tupperware Seals Up Growth in Emerging Markets," *Forbes*, www.forbes.com, April 21, 2010.
18. Tom Mulier and Shin Pei, "Nestle's \$28.1 Billion Payday Gives Google-Size Cash," *Bloomberg BusinessWeek*, June 30, 2010.
19. "World Population to Exceed 9 Billion by 2050," press release, *United Nations*, www.un.org, March 11, 2009; "2008 World Population Data Sheet," *Population Reference Bureau*, www.pbr.org.
20. Adapted from Vijay Mahajan, Marcos V. Pratini De Moraes, and Jerry Wind, "The Invisible Global Market," *Marketing Management* (Winter 2000), pp. 31–35. See also, Joseph Johnson and Gerard J. Tellis, "Drivers of Success for Market Entry into China and India," *Journal of Marketing* 72 (May 2008), pp. 1–13; Tarun Khanna and Krishna G. Palepu, "Emerging Giants: Building

- World-Class Companies in Developing Countries,” *Harvard Business Review*, October 2006, pp. 60–69.
21. C. K. Prahalad, *The Fortune at the Bottom of the Pyramid: Eradicating Poverty through Profits* (Upper Saddle River, NJ: Wharton School Publishing, 2005); Niraj Dawar and Amitava Chattopadhyay, “Rethinking Marketing Programs for Emerging Markets,” *Long Range Planning* 35 (October 2002).
 22. Bart J. Bronnenberg, Jean-Pierre Dubé, and Sanjay Dhar, “Consumer Packaged Goods in the United States: National Brands, Local Branding,” *Journal of Marketing Research* 44 (February 2007), pp. 4–13; Bart J. Bronnenberg, Jean-Pierre Dubé, and Sanjay Dhar, “National Brands, Local Branding: Conclusions and Future Research Opportunities,” *Journal of Marketing Research* 44 (February 2007), pp. 26–28; Bart J. Bronnenberg, Sanjay K. Dhar, and Jean-Pierre Dubé, “Brand History, Geography, and the Persistence of CPG Brand Shares,” *Journal of Political Economy* 117 (February 2009), pp. 87–115.
 23. David Michael and Arindam Bhattacharya, “The BCG 50 Local Dynamos: How Dynamic RDE-Based Companies Are Mastering Their Home Markets—and What MNCs Need to Learn from Them,” Boston Consulting Group, *BCG Report*, March 2008; “The Stay-at-Home Giants,” *Economist*, March 15, 2008, p. 78; “In Emerging Markets ‘Local Dynamos’ Are Challenging Big Multinationals,” *Manufacturing & Technology News*, April 17, 2008.
 24. Manjeet Kripalani, “Finally, Coke Gets It Right,” *BusinessWeek*, February 10, 2003, p. 47; Manjeet Kripalani, “Battling for Pennies in India’s Villages,” *BusinessWeek*, June 10, 2002, p. 22.
 25. Carlos Niezen and Julio Rodriguez, “Distribution Lessons from Mom and Pop,” *Harvard Business Review*, April 2008; “Sweet Surrender: Can Kraft’s Cadbury Acquisition Help It Tap the Indian Market?” *Knowledge@Wharton*, February 25, 2010.
 26. Clayton M. Christensen, Stephen Wunker, and Hari Nair, “Innovation vs. Poverty,” *Forbes*, October 13, 2008.
 27. Ellen Byron, “P&G’s Global Target: Shelves of Tiny Stores,” *Wall Street Journal*, July 16, 2007; “Not So Fizzy,” *Economist*, February 23, 2002, pp. 66–67; Rajeev Batra, Venkatram Ramaswamy, Dana L. Alden, Jan-Benedict E. M. Steenkamp, and S. Ramachander, “Effects of Brand Local and Nonlocal Origin on Consumer Attitudes in Developing Countries,” *Journal of Consumer Psychology* 9 (2000), pp. 83–95.
 28. Bruce Einhorn, “Grudge Match in China,” *BusinessWeek*, April 2, 2007, pp. 42–43; Russell Flannery, “Watch Your Back,” *Forbes*, April 23, 2007, pp. 104–5; Steve Hamm and Dexter Roberts, “China’s First Global Capitalist,” *BusinessWeek*, December 11, 2006, pp. 52–57; “The Fast and the Furious,” *Economist*, November 25, 2006, pp. 63–64.
 29. Jenny Mero, “John Deere’s Farm Team,” *Fortune*, April 14, 2008, pp. 119–24.
 30. Peter J. Williamson and Ming Zeng, “Value for Money Strategies for Recessionary Times,” *Harvard Business Review*, March 2009, pp. 66–74; Vikram Skula, “Business Basics at the Base of the Pyramid,” *Harvard Business Review*, June 2008, pp. 53–57.
 31. Johny K. Johansson, “Global Marketing: Research on Foreign Entry, Local Marketing, Global Management,” Bart Weitz and Robin Wensley, eds., *Handbook of Marketing* (London: Sage, 2002), pp. 457–83.
 32. Jennifer Cirillo, “Western Europe Is Buzzing,” *Beverage World*, June 2010, pp. 22–24.
 33. Bernard Condon, “Babble Rouser,” *Forbes*, August 11, 2008, pp. 72–77.
 34. Bechtel, www.bechtel.com/overview.html; Jack Ewing, “Bechtel Drives a Highway through the Heart of Transylvania,” *BusinessWeek*, January 7, 2008.
 35. For an academic review, see Leonidas C. Leonidou, Constantine S. Katsikeas, and Nigel F. Piercy, “Identifying Managerial Influences on Exporting: Past Research and Future Directions,” *Journal of International Marketing* 6 (Summer 1998), pp. 74–102.
 36. Karen Cho, “KFC China’s Recipe for Success,” *Forbes India*, October 28, 2009; “Brands annual report 2009,” *Yum!* www.yum.com/annualreport/pdf/2009AnnualReport.pdf; Michael Arndt and Dexter Roberts, “A Finger-Lickin’ Good Time in China,” *BusinessWeek*, October 30, 2006, p. 50; “Cola down Mexico Way,” *Economist*, October 11, 2003, pp. 69–70.
 37. Claudia H. Deutsch, “The Venturesome Giant,” *New York Times*, October 5, 2007.
 38. Vikram Mahidhar, Craig Giffi, and Ajit Kambil with Ryan Alvanos, “Rethinking Emerging Market Strategies,” *Deloitte Review*, Issue 4, 2009.
 39. “Burgers and Fries a la Francaise,” *Economist*, April 17, 2004, pp. 60–61; Johny K. Johansson, “Global Marketing: Research on Foreign Entry, Local Marketing, Global Management,” Bart Weitz and Robin Wensley, eds., *Handbook of Marketing* (London: Sage, 2002), pp. 457–83; Shaoming Zou and S. Tamer Cavusgil, “The GMS: A Broad Conceptualization of Global Marketing Strategy and Its Effect on Firm Performance,” *Journal of Marketing* 66 (October 2002), pp. 40–56; “What Makes a Company Great?” *Fortune*, October 26, 1998, pp. 218–26; Bernard Wysocki Jr., “The Global Mall: In Developing Nations, Many Youths Splurge, Mainly on U.S. Goods,” *Wall Street Journal*, June 26, 1997; David M. Szymanski, Sundar G. Bharadwaj, and P. Rajan Varadarajan, “Standardization versus Adaptation of International Marketing Strategy: An Empirical Investigation,” *Journal of Marketing* 57 (October 1993), pp. 1–17; Theodore Levitt, “The Globalization of Markets,” *Harvard Business Review*, May–June 1983, pp. 92–102.
 40. Gail Edmondson, “Skoda Means Quality. Really,” *BusinessWeek*, October 1, 2007, p. 46. Some of the more popular jokes from the past: “How do you double the value of a Škoda? Fill up the gas tank.” “What do you call a Skoda with a sunroof? A dumpster.” and “Why do you need a rear-window defroster on a Skoda? To keep your hands warm when pushing it.”

41. For some research method issues in adapting surveys to different cultures, see Martijn G. de Jong, Jan-Benedict E. M. Steenkamp, and Bernard P. Veldkamp, "A Model for the Construction of Country-Specific Yet Internationally Comparable Short-Form Marketing Scales," *Marketing Science* 28 (July–August 2009), pp. 674–89.
42. Nigel Hollis, *The Global Brand* (New York: Palgrave Macmillan, 2008); Nigel Hollis, "Going Global? Better Think Local Instead," *Brandweek*, December 1, 2008, p. 14.
43. "U.S. Soft Drink Consumption on the Decline," *Reuters*, August 24, 2009; *The Economist: Pocket World in Figures* (Profile Books: London, 2009).
44. For some recent examples, see Ana Valenzuela, Barbara Mellers, and Judi Stebel, "Pleasurable Surprises: A Cross-Cultural Study of Consumer Responses to Unexpected Incentives," *Journal of Consumer Research* 36 (February 2010), pp. 792–805; Tuba Üstüner and Douglas B. Holt, "Toward a Theory of Status Consumption in Less Industrialized Countries," *Journal of Consumer Research* 37 (June 2010), pp. 37–56; Praveen K. Kopalle, Donald R. Lehmann, and John U. Farley, "Consumer Expectations and Culture: The Effect of Belief in Karma in India," *Journal of Consumer Research* 37 (August 2010), pp. 251–63.
45. Geert Hofstede, *Culture's Consequences* (Beverly Hills, CA: Sage, 1980).
46. D. A. Aaker and Erich Joachimsthaler, "The Lure of Global Branding," *Harvard Business Review*, 37 (November 1999), pp. 137–44.
47. For some in-depth treatments of branding in Asia in particular, see S. Ramesh Kumar, *Marketing & Branding: The Indian Scenario* (Delhi: Pearson Education, 2007); Martin Roll, *Asian Brand Strategy: How Asia Builds Strong Brands* (New York: Palgrave MacMillan, 2006); Paul Temporal, *Branding in Asia: The Creation, Development, and Management of Asian Brands for the Global Market* (Singapore: John Wiley & Sons, 2001).
48. Michael Arnt, "Knock Knock, It's Your Big Mac," *BusinessWeek*, July 23, 2007, p. 36; Lulu Raghavan, "Lessons from the Maharaja Mac: Five Rules for Entering the Indian Market," *Landor Associates*, www.landor.com, December 2007.
49. Deepa Chandrasekaran and Gerard J. Tellis, "Global Takeoff of New Products: Culture, Wealth, or Vanishing Differences?" *Marketing Science* 27 (September–October 2008), pp. 844–60.
50. Leila Abboud, "Philips Widens Marketing Push in India," *Wall Street Journal*, March 20, 2009.
51. Walter J. Keegan and Mark C. Green, *Global Marketing*, 4th ed. (Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2005); Warren J. Keegan, *Global Marketing Management*, 7th ed. (Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2002).
52. Paulo Prada and Bruce Orwall, "A Certain 'Je Ne Sais Quoi' at Disney's New Park," *Wall Street Journal*, March 12, 2003.
53. Ralf van der Lans, Joseph A. Cote, Catherine A. Cole, Siew Meng Leong, Ale Smidts, Pamela W. Henderson, Christian Bluemelhuber, Paul A. Bottomley, John R. Doyle, Alexander Fedorikhin, Janakiraman Moorthy, B. Ramaseshan, and Bernd H. Schmitt, "Cross-National Logo Evaluation Analysis: An Individual-Level Approach," *Marketing Science* 28 (September–October 2009), pp. 968–85.
54. F. C. (Frank) Hong, Anthony Pecotich, and Clifford J. Shultz II, "Language Constraints, Product Attributes, and Consumer Perceptions in East and Southeast Asia," *Journal of International Marketing* 10 (June 2002), pp. 29–45.
55. Mark Lasswell, "Lost in Translation," *Business 2.0*, August 2004, pp. 68–70; Richard P. Carpenter and the *Globe* Staff, "What They Meant to Say Was . . .," *Boston Globe*, August 2, 1998.
56. For an interesting distinction based on the concept of global consumer culture positioning, see Dana L. Alden, Jan-Benedict E. M. Steenkamp, and Rajeev Batra, "Brand Positioning through Advertising in Asia, North America, and Europe: The Role of Global Consumer Culture," *Journal of Marketing* 63 (January 1999), pp. 75–87.
57. Thomas J. Madden, Kelly Hewett, and Martin S. Roth, "Managing Images in Different Cultures: A Cross-National Study of Color Meanings and Preferences," *Journal of International Marketing* 8 (Winter 2000), pp. 90–107; Zeynep Gürhan-Canli and Durairaj Maheswaran, "Cultural Variations in Country-of-Origin Effects," *Journal of Marketing Research* 37 (August 2000), pp. 309–17.
58. Geoffrey Fowler, Brian Steinberg, and Aaron O. Patrick, "Globalizing Apple's Ads," *Wall Street Journal*, March 1, 2007; Joan Voight, "Best Campaign of the Year: Apple 'Mac vs. PC,'" *Adweek*, July 17, 2007.
59. See, for example, Haksin Chan, Lisa C. Wan, and Leo Y. M. Shin, "The Contrasting Effects of Culture on Consumer Tolerance: Interpersonal Face and Impersonal Fate," *Journal of Consumer Research* 36 (August 2009), pp. 292–304.
60. Aradhna Krishna and Rohini Ahluwalia, "Language Choice in Advertising to Bilinguals: Asymmetric Effects for Multinationals versus Local Firms," *Journal of Consumer Research* 35 (December 2008), pp. 692–705.
61. Normandy Madden, "Crossing Borders by Building Relationships," *Advertising Age*, October 13, 2008, p. 32.
62. Preeti Khicha, "Building Brands in Rural India," *Brandchannel*, www.brandchannel.com, October 8, 2007.
63. John L. Graham, Alma T. Mintu, and Waymond Rogers, "Explorations of Negotiations Behaviors in Ten Foreign Cultures Using a Model Developed in the United States," *Management Science* 40 (January 1994), pp. 72–95.
64. Price perceptions may differ too, see Lisa E. Bolton, Hean Tat Keh, and Joseph W. Alba, "How Do Price Fairness Perceptions Differ Across Culture?" *Journal of Marketing Research* 47 (June 2010), pp. 564–76.

65. David Pierson, "Beijing Loves IKEA—But Not for Shopping," *Los Angeles Times*, August 25, 2009; Mei Fong, "IKEA Hits Home in China: The Swedish Design Giant, Unlike Other Retailers, Slashes Prices for the Chinese," *Wall Street Journal*, March 3, 2006, p. B1.
66. Companies often fight back, however, and legally contest the imposition of any duties. After several years, the Chinese government was eventually able to overturn the duties slapped on the off-road tire makers. See "Commerce Finds Unfair Dumping of Off-Road Tires from China," *International Trade Association*, February 6, 2008; "Ministry: China Pleased U.S. Overturned Duties on its Off-Road Tires," *People's Daily*, August 17, 2010.
67. AGMA, "KPMG/AGMA Survey Projects Global 'Global Market' of \$58 Billion for Information Technology Manufacturers," *KPMG*, www.kpmg.com, December 11, 2008.
68. David Blanchard, "Just in Time—How to Fix a Leaky Supply Chain," *IndustryWeek*, May 1, 2007.
69. Kersi D. Antia, Mark E. Bergen, Shantanu Dutta, and Robert J. Fisher, "How Does Enforcement Deter Gray Market Incidence?" *Journal of Marketing* 70 (January 2006), pp. 92–106; Matthew B. Myers and David A. Griffith, "Strategies for Combating Gray Market Activity," *Business Horizons* 42 (November–December 1999), pp. 2–8.
70. Brian Grow, Chi-Chu Tschang, Cliff Edwards, and Brian Burnsed, "Dangerous Fakes," *BusinessWeek*, October 8, 2008; Brian Burnsed, "The Most Counterfeited Products," *Businessweek*, www.businessweek.com, October 8, 2008.
71. "IPR Seizure Statistics," *US Department of Homeland Security*, www.cbp.gov/xp/cgov/trade/priority_trade/ipr/pubs/seizure/, December 9, 2010.
72. Eric Shine, "Faking Out the Fakers," *BusinessWeek*, June 4, 2007, pp. 76–80.
73. Deborah Kong, "Smart Tech Fights Fakes," *Business 2.0*, March 2007, p. 30.
74. David Arnold, "Seven Rules of International Distribution," *Harvard Business Review*, November–December 2000, pp. 131–37.
75. *Ibid.*
76. Katrijn Gielens, Linda M. Van De Gucht, Jan-Benedict E.M. Steenkamp, and Marnik G. Dekimpe, "Dancing with a Giant: The Effect of Wal-Mart's Entry into the United Kingdom on the Performance of European Retailers," *Journal of Marketing Research* 45 (October 2008), pp. 519–34.
77. Noreen O'Leary, "Infiniti Plays Up Japanese Heritage in Global Campaign," *Brandweek*, February 15, 2010, p. 5.
78. "The Shock of Old," *Economist*, July 13, 2002, p. 49.
79. "From Fantasy Worlds to Food," *Economist*, November 11, 2006, p. 73; "A New Sort of Beauty Contest," *Economist*, November 11, 2006, p. 68.
80. Flora Bagenal and John Harlow, "Borat Make Benefit Kazakh Tourist Boom," *Sunday Times*, December 3, 2006; Lisa Minot, "Borat Causes Tourism Boom," *The Sun*, March 5, 2007; "Borat 'Boosted Kazakh Tourism,'" *ABC News*, www.abc.net.au, November 13, 2008.
81. Jim Rendon, "When Nations Need a Little Marketing," *New York Times*, November 23, 2003.
82. Joanna Kakissis, "Vacationers Rethink Greece Amid Debt Crisis," *National Public Radio*, www.npr.org, June 22, 2010; Elena Becatoros, "Greece's Tourism Industry Under Threat," *MSNBC*, www.msnbc.com, June 15, 2010.
83. Zeynep Gurhan-Canli and Durairaj Maheswaran, "Cultural Variations in Country-of-Origin Effects," *Journal of Marketing Research* 37 (August 2000), pp. 309–17. For some different related issues, see also Lily Dong and Kelly Tian, "The Use of Western Brands in Asserting Chinese National Identity," *Journal of Consumer Research* 36 (October 2009), pp. 504–23; Yinlong Zhang and Adwait Khare, "The Impact of Accessible Identities on the Evaluation of Global versus Local Products," *Journal of Consumer Research* 36 (October 2009), pp. 524–37; Rohit Varman and Russell W. Belk, "Nationalism and Ideology in an Anticonsumption Movement," *Journal of Consumer Research* 36 (December 2009), pp. 686–700.
84. Douglas B. Holt, John A. Quelch, and Earl L. Taylor, "How Global Brands Compete," *Harvard Business Review* 82, September 2004, pp. 68–75; Jan-Benedict E. M. Steenkamp, Rajeev Batra, and Dana L. Alden, "How Perceived Brand Globalness Creates Brand Value," *Journal of International Business Studies* 34 (January 2003), pp. 53–65.
85. Gürhan-Canli and Maheswaran "Cultural Variations in Country-of-Origin Effects"; Johny K. Johansson, "Global Marketing: Research on Foreign Entry, Local Marketing, Global Management," Barton A. Weitz and Robin Wensley, eds., *Handbook of Marketing* (London: Sage, 2002), pp. 457–83; "Old Wine in New Bottles," *Economist*, February 21, 1998, p. 45; Johny K. Johansson, "Determinants and Effects of the Use of 'Made in' Labels," *International Marketing Review (UK)* 6 (January 1989), pp. 47–58; Warren J. Bilkey and Erik Nes, "Country-of-Origin Effects on Product Evaluations," *Journal of International Business Studies* 13 (Spring–Summer 1982), pp. 89–99.
86. Kimberly Weisul, "Why More Are Buying into 'Buy Local,'" *Bloomberg BusinessWeek*, March 1, 2010, pp. 57–60.
87. Jathon Sapsford and Norihiko Shirouzo, "Mom, Apple Pie and . . . Toyota?" *Wall Street Journal*, May 11, 2006.
88. Kenneth Hein, "Emerging Markets Still Like U.S. Brands," *Brandweek*, April 16, 2007, p. 4.
89. For additional discussion, see "Strengthening Brand America," *The Burghard Group*, www.strengtheningbrandamerica.com, December 9, 2010.
90. Joel Backaler, "Haier: A Chinese Company That Innovates," *China Tracker*, www.forbes.com, June 17, 2010; Zhang Ruimin, "Voices from China," *Forbes*, September 28, 2009.
91. Rajdeep Grewal, Murali Chandrashekar, and F. Robert Dwyer, "Navigating Local Environments with

Global Strategies: A Contingency Model of Multinational Subsidiary Performance,” *Marketing Science* 27 (September–October 2008), pp. 886–902. Christopher A. Bartlett and Sumantra Ghoshal, *Managing across Borders* (Cambridge, MA: Harvard Business School Press, 1989).

92. Moon Ihlwan, “The Foreigners at the Top of LG,” *BusinessWeek*, December 22, 2008, pp. 56–57.
93. Jim Murphy, “The Jack’s Eye-View on Marketing a Global Brand Locally,” talk given at *The Beverage Forum*, New York, NY, May 20, 2009.
94. Betsy McKay, “Coke Hunts for Talent to Re-Establish Its Marketing Might,” *Wall Street Journal*, March 6, 2002.
95. David Kiley, “Ghosn Hits the Accelerator,” *BusinessWeek*, May 1, 2008.

Chapter 22

1. Mark Borden and Anya Kamentz, “The Prophet CEO,” *Fast Company*, September 2008, pp. 126–29; Tara Weiss, “Special Report: Going Green,” *Forbes.com*. *Forbes.com*, July 3, 2007; Matthew Grimm, “Progressive Business,” *Brandweek*, November 28, 2005, pp. 16–26; Kate Galbraith, “Timberland’s New Footprint: Recycled Tires,” *New York Times*, April 3, 2009; Aman Singh, “Timberland’s Smoking Ban: Good Corporate Citizenship or Overkill?” *Forbes*, June 3, 2010; Amy Cortese, “Products; Friend of Nature? Let’s See Those Shoes,” *New York Times*, March 6, 2007; Timberland, www.timberland.com.
2. Christopher Vollmer, *Always On: Advertising, Marketing, and Media in an Era of Consumer Control* (New York: McGraw-Hill, 2008).
3. For additional analysis and discussion, see Philip Kotler, Hermawan Karatajaya, and Iwan Setiawan, *Marketing 3.0: From Products to Consumers to the Human Spirit* (Hoboken, NJ: Wiley, 2010).
4. Devin Leonard, “The New Abnormal,” *Bloomberg BusinessWeek*, August 2–August 10, 2010, pp. 50–55; Noreen O’Leary, “CMOs Face New Reality,” *Adweek*, August 11, 2010.
5. John Gerzema and Michael D’Antonio, *Spend Shift: How the Post-Crisis Values Revolution Is Changing the Way We Buy, Sell, and Live* (San Francisco: Jossey-Bass, 2010).
6. John A. Quelch and Katherine E. Jocz, *Greater Good: How Good Marketing Makes for Better Democracy* (Boston, MA: Harvard Business School Press, 2007).
7. Clay Chandler, “Full Speed Ahead,” *Fortune*, February 7, 2005, pp. 78–84; “What You Can Learn from Toyota,” *Business 2.0*, January–February 2005, pp. 67–72; Keith Naughton, “Red, White, and Bold,” *Newsweek*, April 25, 2005, pp. 34–36.
8. For some thoughtful academic perspectives on marketing strategy and tactics, see *Kellogg on Integrated Marketing*, Dawn Iacobucci and Bobby Calder, eds. (New York: Wiley, 2003); and *Kellogg on Marketing*, Dawn Iacobucci, ed. (New York: Wiley, 2001).
9. For a broad historical treatment of marketing thought, see D. G. Brian Jones and Eric H. Shaw, “A History of Marketing Thought,” Barton A. Weitz and Robin Wensley, eds., *Handbook of Marketing* (London: Sage, 2002), pp. 39–65; for more specific issues related to the interface between marketing and sales, see Christian Homburg, Ove Jensen, and Harley Krohmer, “Configurations of Marketing and Sales: A Taxonomy,” *Journal of Marketing* 72 (March 2008), pp. 133–54.
10. Frederick E. Webster Jr., “Expanding Your Network,” *Marketing Management* (Fall 2010), pp. 16–23; Frederick E. Webster Jr., Alan J. Malter, and Shankar Ganesan, “Can Marketing Regain Its Seat at the Table?” *Marketing Science Institute Report No. 03-113* (Cambridge, MA: Marketing Science Institute, 2003); Frederick E. Webster Jr., “The Role of Marketing and the Firm,” Barton A. Weitz and Robin Wensley, eds., *Handbook of Marketing* (London: Sage, 2002), pp. 39–65.
11. Jan Wieseke, Michael Ahearne, Son K. Lam, and Rolf van Dick, “The Role of Leaders in Internal Marketing,” *Journal of Marketing* 73 (March 2009), pp. 123–45; Hamish Pringle and William Gordon, *Beyond Manners: How to Create the Self-Confident Organisation to Live the Brand* (West Sussex, England: John Wiley & Sons, 2001); John P. Workman Jr., Christian Homburg, and Kjell Gruner, “Marketing Organization: An Integrative Framework of Dimensions and Determinants,” *Journal of Marketing* 62 (July 1998), pp. 21–41.
12. Grant McCracken, *Chief Culture Officer: How to Create a Living Breathing Corporation* (New York: Basic Books, 2009).
13. Todd Guild, “Think Regionally, Act Locally: Four Steps to Reaching the Asian Consumer,” *McKinsey Quarterly* 4 (September 2009), pp. 22–30.
14. “State and Country Quick Facts,” *U.S. Census Bureau*, <http://quickfacts.census.gov/qfd/states/12/12086.html>.
15. “Category Management Goes beyond Grocery,” *Cannondale Associates White Paper*, www.cannondaleassoc.com, February 13, 2007; Laurie Freeman, “P&G Widens Power Base: Adds Category Managers,” *Advertising Age*; Michael J. Zenor, “The Profit Benefits of Category Management,” *Journal of Marketing Research* 31 (May 1994), pp. 202–13; Gerry Khermouch, “Brands Overboard,” *Brandweek*, August 22, 1994, pp. 25–39; Zachary Schiller, “The Marketing Revolution at Procter & Gamble,” *BusinessWeek*, July 25, 1988, pp. 72–76.
16. For some further reading on the origins of category management, see Robert Dewar and Don Shultz, “The Product Manager, an Idea Whose Time Has Gone,” *Marketing Communications* (May 1998), pp. 28–35; George S. Low and Ronald A. Fullerton, “Brands, Brand Management, and the Brand Manager System: A Critical Historical Evaluation,” *Journal of Marketing Research* 31 (May 1994), pp. 173–90; Michael J. Zanor, “The Profit Benefits of Category Management,” *Journal of Marketing Research* 31 (May 1994), pp. 202–13.
17. D. Gail Fleenor, “The Next Space Optimizer,” *Progressive Grocer*, March 2009.

18. Larry Selden and Geoffrey Colvin, *Angel Customers & Demon Customers* (New York: Portfolio [Penguin], 2003).
19. For an in-depth discussion of issues around implementing a customer-based organization on which much of this paragraph is based, see George S. Day, "Aligning the Organization with the Market," *MIT Sloan Management Review* 48 (Fall 2006), pp. 41–49.
20. Frederick E. Webster Jr., "The Role of Marketing and the Firm," Barton A. Weitz and Robin Wensley, eds., *Handbook of Marketing* (London: Sage, 2002), pp. 39–65.
21. For research on the prevalence of CMOs, see Pravin Nath and Vijay Mahajan, "Chief Marketing Officers: A Study of Their Presence in Firms' Top Management Teams," *Journal of Marketing* 72 (January 2008), pp. 65–81. For more discussion on the importance of CMOs, see David A. Aaker, *Spanning Silos: The New CMO Imperative* (Boston: Harvard Business School Press, 2008).
22. For some classic perspectives, see Benson P. Shapiro, "Can Marketing and Manufacturing Coexist?" *Harvard Business Review*, September–October 1977, pp. 104–14. Also see Robert W. Ruekert and Orville C. Walker Jr., "Marketing's Interaction with Other Functional Units: A Conceptual Framework with Other Empirical Evidence," *Journal of Marketing* 51 (January 1987), pp. 1–19.
23. For more on creativity, see Pat Fallon and Fred Senn, *Juicing the Orange: How to Turn Creativity into a Powerful Business Advantage* (Boston: Harvard Business School Press, 2006); Bob Schmetterer, *Leap: A Revolution in Creative Business Strategy* (Hoboken, NJ: Wiley, 2003); Jean-Marie Dru, *Beyond Disruption: Changing the Rules in the Marketplace* (Hoboken, NJ: Wiley, 2002); Michael Michalko, *Cracking Creativity: The Secrets of Creative Genius* (Berkeley, CA: Ten Speed Press, 1998); James M. Higgins, *101 Creative Problem-Solving Techniques* (New York: New Management Publishing, 1994); and all the books by Edward DeBono.
24. Gary Hamel, *Leading the Revolution* (Boston: Harvard Business School Press, 2000).
25. Jagdish N. Sheth, *The Self-Destructive Habits of Good Companies . . . And How to Break Them* (Upper Saddle River, NJ: Wharton School Publishing, 2007).
26. William L. Wilkie and Elizabeth S. Moore, "Marketing's Relationship to Society," Barton A. Weitz and Robin Wensley, eds., *Handbook of Marketing* (London: Sage, 2002), pp. 1–38.
27. "Special Report: Corporate Social Responsibility," *Economist*, January 17, 2008. For a broader academic perspective, see Michael E. Porter and Mark R. Kramer, "Strategy & Society," *Harvard Business Review* (December 2006): 78–82; Clayton M. Christensen, Heiner Baumann, Rudy Ruggles, and Thomas M. Stadler, "Disruption Innovation for Social Change," *Harvard Business Review* (December 2006): 94–101.
28. Walmart, <http://walmartstores.com/Sustainability/7951.aspx>; Monte Burke, "Mr. Green Jeans," *Forbes*, May 24, 2010; Brian Grow, "The Debate over Doing Good," *BusinessWeek*, August 15, 2005, pp. 76–78.
29. Brian Grow, "The Debate over Doing Good," *BusinessWeek*, August 15, 2005.
30. MaryLou Costa, "P&G Marketing Boss Urges Brands to Move Beyond Traditional Advertising," *Marketing Week*, June 24, 2010; Elaine Wong, "P&G Shows Its Softer Side with Downy Cause Effort," *Brandweek*, February 1, 2010, p. 6; Elaine Wang, "P&G Throws Values into Value Equation," *Brandweek*, March 9, 2009, p. 5.
31. Raj Sisodia, David B. Wolfe, and Jag Sheth, *Firms of Endearment: How World-Class Companies Profit from Passion and Purpose* (Upper Saddle River, NJ: Wharton School Publishing, 2007).
32. Gary Hirshberg, *Stirring It Up: How to Make Money and Save the World* (New York: Hyperion, 2008); Marc Gunther, "Stonyfield Stirs Up the Yogurt Market," *Fortune*. www.cnnmoney.com, January 4, 2008; Melanie D. G. Kaplan, "Stonyfield Farm CEO: How an Organic Yogurt Business Can Scale," *SmartPlanet*, www.smartplanet.com, May 17, 2010.
33. Elisabeth Sullivan, "Play by the New Rules," *Marketing News*, November 30, 2009, pp. 5–9; For further reading, see Dorothy Cohen, *Legal Issues in Marketing Decision Making* (Cincinnati, OH: South-Western College Publishing, 1995).
34. Sarah Ellison, "Kraft Limits on Kids' Ads May Cheese Off Rivals," *Wall Street Journal*, January 13, 2005.
35. Shelby D. Hunt and Scott Vitell, "The General Theory of Marketing Ethics: A Retrospective and Revision," John Quelch and Craig Smith, eds., *Ethics in Marketing* (Chicago: Irwin, 1992).
36. "Distrust, Discontent, Anger and Partisan Rancor," *The Pew Research for the People & the Press*, April 18, 2010.
37. Ronald Alsop, "How a Boss's Deeds Buff a Firm's Reputation," *Wall Street Journal*, January 31, 2007.
38. Mary Jo Hatch and Majken Schultz, *Taking Brand Initiative: How Companies Can Align Strategy, Culture, and Identity through Corporate Branding* (San Francisco: Jossey-Bass, 2008); Majken Schultz, Yun Mi Antorini, and Fabian F. Csaba, *Corporate Branding: Purpose, People, and Process* (Køge, Denmark: Copenhagen Business School Press, 2005); Ronald J. Alsop, *The 18 Immutable Laws of Corporate Reputation: Creating, Protecting, and Repairing Your Most Valuable Asset* (New York: Free Press, 2004); Marc Gunther, "Tree Huggers, Soy Lovers, and Profits," *Fortune*, June 23, 2003, pp. 98–104; Ronald J. Alsop, "Perils of Corporate Philanthropy," *Wall Street Journal*, January 16, 2002.
39. Emily Steel, "Nestlé Takes a Beating on Social-Media Sites," *Wall Street Journal*, March 29, 2010, p. B5; Mya Frazier, "Going Green? Plant Deep Roots," *Advertising Age*, April 30, 2007, pp. 1, 54–55.
40. Scott Kirsner, "An Environmental Quandary Percolates at Green Mountain Coffee Roasters," *Boston Globe*, January 3, 2010; Natalie Zmuda, "Green Mountain

- Takes on Coffee Giants Cup by Cup," *Advertising Age*, June 1, 2009, p. 38.
41. Angela M. Eikenberry, "The Hidden Cost of Cause Marketing," *Stanford Social Innovation Review* (Summer 2009); Aneel Karnani, "The Case Against Corporate Social Responsibility," *Wall Street Journal*, August 23, 2010.
 42. Sandra O'Loughlin, "The Wearin' o' the Green," *Brandweek*, April 23, 2007, pp. 26–27. For a critical response, see also, John R. Ehrenfield, "Feeding the Beast," *Fast Company*, December 2006–January 2007, pp. 42–43.
 43. Pete Engardio, "Beyond the Green Corporation," *BusinessWeek*, January 29, 2007, pp. 50–64.
 44. Global 100, www.global100.org.
 45. Pete Engardio, "Beyond the Green Corporation," *BusinessWeek*, January 29, 2007, pp. 50–64.
 46. Noreen O' Leary, "Marketer of the Year: Jessica Buttimer," *Next*, September 14, 2009, p. 32; Jack Neff, "Marketing 50: Green Works (Jessica Buttimer)," *Advertising Age*, November 17, 2008, p. S-2; Elaine Wong, "CPGs Watch as Clorox Crashes the Green Party," *Brandweek*, April 21, 2008, p. 13; Anya Kamenetz, "Cleaning Solution," *Fast Company*, September 2008, pp. 121–25.
 47. David Roberts, "Another Inconvenient Truth," *Fast Company*, March 2008, p. 70; Melanie Warner, "P&G's Chemistry Test," *Fast Company*, July/August 2008, pp. 71–74.
 48. Mark Dolliver, "Thumbs Down on Corporate Green Efforts," *Adweek*, August 31, 2010; Betsy Cummings, "A Green Backlash Gains Momentum," *Brandweek*, March 3, 2008, p. 6; Michael Hopkins, "What the 'Green' Consumer Wants," *MIT Sloan Management Review* (Summer 2009), pp. 87–89. For some related consumer research, see Julie R. Irwin and Rebecca Walker Naylor, "Ethical Decisions and Response Mode Compatibility: Weighting of Ethical Attributes in Consideration Sets Formed by Excluding versus Including Product Alternatives," *Journal of Marketing Research* 46 (April 2009), pp. 234–46.
 49. Jack Neff, "Green-Marketing Revolution Defies Economic Downturn," *Advertising Age*, April 20, 2009, pp. 1, 23; Ram Nidumolu, C. K. Prahalad, and M. R. Rangaswami, "Why Sustainability Is Now the Key Driver of Innovation," *Harvard Business Review*, September 2009, p. 57.
 50. John A. Quelch and Nathalie Laidler-Kylander, *The New Global Brands: Managing Non-Government Organizations in the 21st Century* (Mason, OH: South-Western, 2006); Philip Kotler and Nancy Lee, *Corporate Social Responsibility: Doing the Most Good for Your Company and Your Cause* (New York: Wiley, 2005); Lynn Upshaw, *Truth: The New Rules for Marketing in a Skeptical World* (New York: AMACOM, 2007).
 51. Newman's Own Foundation, www.newmansownfoundation.org; Paul Newman and A. E. Hotchner, *Shameless Exploitation in Pursuit of the Common Good: The Madcap Business Adventure by the Truly Oddest Couple* (Waterville, ME: Thorndike Press, 2003).
 52. "U.S. Charitable Giving Falls 3.6 Percent in 2009 to \$303.75 Billion," *Giving USA 2010 Report*, June 9, 2010.
 53. Robert Berner, "Smarter Corporate Giving," *BusinessWeek*, November 28, 2005, pp. 68–76; Craig N. Smith, "Corporate Social Responsibility: Whether or How?" *California Management Review* 45 (Summer 2003), pp. 52–76.
 54. Larry Chiagouris and Ipshita Ray, "Saving the World with Cause-Related Marketing," *Marketing Management* 16 (July–August 2007), pp. 48–51; Hamish Pringle and Marjorie Thompson, *Brand Spirit: How Cause-Related Marketing Builds Brands* (New York: Wiley, 1999); Sue Adkins, *Cause-Related Marketing: Who Cares Wins* (Oxford, England: Butterworth-Heinemann, 1999); "Marketing, Corporate Social Initiatives, and the Bottom Line," Marketing Science Institute Conference Summary, *MSI Report No. 01-106*, 2001.
 55. Rajan Varadarajan and Anil Menon, "Cause-Related Marketing: A Co-Alignment of Marketing Strategy and Corporate Philanthropy," *Journal of Marketing* 52 (July 1988), pp. 58–74.
 56. Minette Drumwright and Patrick E. Murphy, "Corporate Societal Marketing," Paul N. Bloom and Gregory T. Gundlach, eds., *Handbook of Marketing and Society* (Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage, 2001), pp. 162–83. See also, Minette Drumwright, "Company Advertising with a Social Dimension: The Role of Noneconomic Criteria," *Journal of Marketing* 60 (October 1996), pp. 71–87.
 57. C. B. Bhattacharya, Sankar Sen and Daniel Korschun, "Using Corporate Social Responsibility to Win the War for Talent," *MIT Sloan Management Review* 49 (January 2008), pp. 37–44; Xueming Luo and C. B. Bhattacharya, "Corporate Social Responsibility, Customer Satisfaction, and Market Value," *Journal of Marketing* 70 (October 2006), pp. 1–18; Pat Auger, Paul Burke, Timothy Devinney, and Jordan J. Louviere, "What Will Consumers Pay for Social Product Features?" *Journal of Business Ethics* 42 (February 2003), pp. 281–304; Dennis B. Arnett, Steve D. German, and Shelby D. Hunt, "The Identity Salience Model of Relationship Marketing Success: The Case of Nonprofit Marketing," *Journal of Marketing* 67 (April 2003), pp. 89–105; C. B. Bhattacharya and Sankar Sen, "Consumer-Company Identification: A Framework for Understanding Consumers' Relationships with Companies," *Journal of Marketing* 67 (April 2003), pp. 76–88; Sankar Sen and C. B. Bhattacharya, "Does Doing Good Always Lead to Doing Better? Consumer Reactions to Corporate Social Responsibility," *Journal of Marketing Research* 38 (May 2001), pp. 225–44.
 58. Paul N. Bloom, Steve Hoeffler, Kevin Lane Keller, and Carlos E. Basurto, "How Social-Cause Marketing Affects Consumer Perceptions," *MIT Sloan Management Review* (Winter 2006), pp. 49–55; Carolyn J. Simmons and Karen L. Becker-Olsen, "Achieving Marketing

- Objectives through Social Sponsorships," *Journal of Marketing* 70 (October 2006), pp. 154–69; Guido Berens, Cees B. M. van Riel, and Gerrit H. van Bruggen, "Corporate Associations and Consumer Product Responses: The Moderating Role of Corporate Brand Dominance," *Journal of Marketing* 69 (July 2005), pp. 35–48; Donald R. Lichtenstein, Minette E. Drumwright, and Bridgette M. Braig, "The Effect of Social Responsibility on Customer Donations to Corporate-Supported Nonprofits," *Journal of Marketing* 68 (October 2004), pp. 16–32; Stephen Hoeffler and Kevin Lane Keller, "Building Brand Equity through Corporate Societal Marketing," *Journal of Public Policy and Marketing* 21 (Spring 2002), pp. 78–89. See also, Special Issue: Corporate Responsibility, *Journal of Brand Management* 10, nos. 4–5 (May 2003).
59. Mark R. Forehand and Sonya Grier, "When Is Honesty the Best Policy? The Effect of Stated Company Intent on Consumer Skepticism," *Journal of Consumer Psychology* 13 (2003), pp. 349–56; Dwane Hal Dean, "Associating the Corporation with a Charitable Event through Sponsorship: Measuring the Effects on Corporate Community Relations," *Journal of Advertising* 31 (Winter 2002), pp. 77–87.
 60. Susan Perry, "KFC-Komen 'Buckets for the Cure' Campaign Raises Questions," *MinnPost.com*. www.minnpost.com, April 20, 2010; Chuck English, "Cause Splash vs. Cause Marketing," *Doing Good for Business*, www.doinggoodforbusiness.wordpress.com, May 17, 2010; Nancy Schwartz, "Busted Nonprofit Brand: Anatomy of a Corporate Sponsorship Meltdown (Case Study)," *Getting Attention!* www.gettingattention.org, April 28, 2010.
 61. "Nike Announces Global Expansion of LIVESTRONG Product Collection as Lance Armstrong Rides for Hope," *Nike*. www.nike.com, June 30, 2010; Reena Jana, "Nike Goes Green. Very Quietly," *BusinessWeek*, June 22, 2009, p. 56.
 62. Mya Frazier, "Costly Red Campaign Reaps Meager \$18 Million," *Advertising Age*, March 5, 2007; Viewpoint: Bobby Shriver, "CEO: Red's Raised Lots of Green," *Advertising Age*, March 12, 2007; Michelle Conlin, "Shop (in the Name of Love)," *BusinessWeek*, October 2, 2006, p. 9.
 63. Todd Cohen, "Corporations Aim for Strategic Engagement," *Philanthropy Journal*, September 20, 2006; John A. Quelch and Nathalie Laidler-Kylander, *The New Global Brands: Managing Non-Governmental Organizations in the 21st Century* (Cincinnati, OH: South-Western, 2005).
 64. Ronald J. Alsop, *The 18 Immutable Laws of Corporate Reputation: Creating, Protecting, and Repairing Your Most Valuable Asset* (New York: Free Press, 2004), p. 125.
 65. Ronald McDonald House Charities, www.rmhc.org.
 66. Susan Orenstein, "The Selling of Breast Cancer," *Business 2.0*, February 2003, pp. 88–94; H. Meyer, "When the Cause Is Just," *Journal of Business Strategy* 20 (November–December 1999), pp. 27–31.
 67. Christine Bittar, "Seeking Cause and Effect," *Brandweek*, November 11, 2002, pp. 18–24.
 68. Paula Andruss, "'Think Pink' Awareness Much Higher Than Threat," *Marketing News*, February 15, 2006, pp. 14–16; Jessi Hempel, "Selling a Cause, Better Make It Pop," *BusinessWeek*, February 13, 2006, p. 75; Elizabeth Woyke, "Prostate Cancer's Higher Profile," *BusinessWeek*, October 9, 2006, p. 14.
 69. One Sight, www.onesight.org.
 70. Christina Binkley, "Charity Gives Shoe Brand Extra Shine," *Wall Street Journal*, April 1, 2010; "How I Got Started . . . Blake Mycoskie, Founder of TOMS Shoes," *Fortune*, March 22, 2010, p. 72; Dan Heath and Chip Heath, "An Arms Race of Goodness," *Fast Company*, October 2009, pp. 82–83; Toms, www.toms.com/movement-one-for-one.
 71. Philip Kotler and Nancy Lee, *Social Marketing: Influencing Behaviors for Good* (Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage, 2008); Alan Andreasen, *Social Marketing in the 21st Century* (Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage, 2006); Michael L. Rothschild, "Carrots, Sticks, and Promises: A Conceptual Framework for the Management of Public Health and Social Issue Behaviors," *Journal of Marketing* 63 (October 1999), pp. 24–37.
 72. See Michael L. Rothschild, "Carrots, Sticks, and Promises: A Conceptual Framework for the Management of Public Health and Social Issue Behaviors," *Journal of Marketing* 63 (October 1999), pp. 24–37. For an application, see Sekar Raju, Priyali Rajagopal, and Timothy J. Gilbride, "Marketing Healthful Eating to Children: The Effectiveness of Incentives, Pledges, and Competitions," *Journal of Marketing* 74 (May 2010), pp. 93–106.
 73. For some relevant recent academic research on developing social marketing programs, see Deborah A. Small and Nicole M. Verrochi, "The Face of Need: Facial Emotion Expression on Charity Advertisements," *Journal of Marketing Research* 46 (December 2009), pp. 777–87; Katherine White and John Pelozo, "Self-Benefit versus Other-Benefit Marketing Appeals: Their Effectiveness in Generating Charitable Support," *Journal of Marketing* 73 (July 2009), pp. 109–24; Merel Van Diepen, Bas Donkers and Philip Hans Franses, "Dynamic and Competitive Effects of Direct Mailings: A Charitable Giving Application," *Journal of Marketing Research* 46 (February 2009), pp. 120–33; Jen Shang, Americus Reed II, and Rachel Croson, "Identity Congruency Effects on Donations," *Journal of Marketing Research* 45 (June 2008), pp. 351–61.
 74. For more on developing and implementing marketing plans, see H. W. Goetsch, *Developing, Implementing, and Managing an Effective Marketing Plan* (Chicago: NTC Business Books, 1993). See also, Thomas V. Bonoma, *The Marketing Edge: Making Strategies Work* (New York: Free Press, 1985). Much of this section is based on Bonoma's work.
 75. For other examples, see Paul W. Farris, Neil T. Bendle, Phillip E. Pfeifer, and David J. Reibstein, *Marketing*

Metrics: 50+ Metrics Every Executive Should Master (Upper Saddle River, NJ: Wharton School Publishing, 2006); John Davis, *Measuring Marketing: 103 Key Metrics Every Marketer Needs* (Hoboken, NJ: Wiley, 2006).

76. Sam R. Goodman, *Increasing Corporate Profitability* (New York: Ronald Press, 1982), chapter 1. See also, Bernard J. Jaworski, Vlas Stathakopoulos, and H. Shanker Krishnan, "Control Combinations in Marketing: Conceptual Framework and Empirical Evidence," *Journal of Marketing* 57 (January 1993), pp. 57–69.
77. Philip Kotler, William Gregor, and William Rodgers, "The Marketing Audit Comes of Age," *Sloan Management Review* 30 (Winter 1989), pp. 49–62; Frederick Reichheld, *The Loyalty Effect* (Boston: Harvard Business School Press, 1996) discusses attrition of the figures.
78. Useful checklists for a marketing self-audit can be found in Aubrey Wilson, *Aubrey Wilson's Marketing Audit Checklists* (London: McGraw-Hill, 1982); Mike Wilson, *The Management of Marketing* (Westmead, England: Gower Publishing, 1980). A marketing audit software program is described in Ben M. Enis and Stephen J. Garfein, "The Computer-Driven Marketing Audit," *Journal of Management Inquiry* 1 (December 1992), pp. 306–18.
79. Philip Kotler, William Gregor, and William Rodgers, "The Marketing Audit Comes of Age," *Sloan Management Review* 30 (Winter 1989), pp. 49–62.
80. Alfred R. Oxenfeldt, "How to Use Market-Share Measurement," *Harvard Business Review*, January–February 1969, pp. 59–68.
81. There is a one-half chance that a successive observation will be higher or lower. Therefore, the probability of finding six successively higher values is given by $1/2$ to the sixth, or $1/64$.
82. Alternatively, companies need to focus on factors affecting shareholder value. The goal of marketing planning is to increase shareholder value, which is the present value of the future income stream created by the company's present actions. Rate-of-return analysis usually focuses on only one year's results. See, Alfred

Rapport, *Creating Shareholder Value*, rev. ed. (New York: Free Press, 1997).

83. For additional reading on financial analysis, see Peter L. Mullins, *Measuring Customer and Product-Line Profitability* (Washington, DC: Distribution Research and Education Foundation, 1984).
84. Robin Cooper and Robert S. Kaplan, "Profit Priorities from Activity-Based Costing," *Harvard Business Review*, May–June 1991, pp. 130–35; for a recent application to shipping, see Tom Kelley, "What Is the Real Cost: How to Use Lifecycle Cost Analysis for an Accurate Comparison," *Beverage World*, January 2010, pp. 50–51.

Appendix

1. Background information and market data adapted from "Gartner Says Worldwide Mobile Phones Sales Grew 35 Percent in Third Quarter 2010; Smartphone Sales Increased 96 Percent," press release, November 18, 2010, www.gartner.com; Joseph Palenchar, "Smartphone Sales Rise as Selection Grows," *TWICE*, June 21, 2010; Sascha Segan, "Motorola RAZR2: The RAZR2 Cuts Four Ways," *PC Magazine*, October 2, 2007, pp. 32–33; Walter S. Mossberg, "Apple's iPod Touch Is a Beauty of a Player Short on Battery Life," *Wall Street Journal*, September 20, 2007, p. B1; "Roam If You Want To," *PC World*, September 2007, p. 134; Sascha Segan, "Exclusive: One RAZR2, Four Ways to Cut It," *PC Magazine Online*, August 13, 2007, www.pcmag.com; "Apple Unlikely to Budge Anytime Soon on iPhone Pricing," *InformationWeek*, July 26, 2007; "Smartphones Get Smarter, Thanks in Part to the iPhone," *InformationWeek*, July 21, 2007; "Nine Alternatives to Apple's iPhone," *InformationWeek*, June 28, 2007; "Hospital Uses PDA App for Patient Transport," *Health Data Management*, June 2007, p. 14; Jessica E. Vascellaro and Pui-Wing Tam, "RIM's New Gear Fuels Profit Surge; Palm Sputters," *Wall Street Journal*, June 29, 2007, p. B4; "Smart Phones Force Dell from Handhelds," *MicroScope*, April 23, 2007; "2005 PDA Shipments Set Record," *Business Communications Review*, April 2006, p. 6; "Smartphone Market Grows Fast Despite Challenges," *Appliance*, March 2006, p. 16.

This page intentionally left blank